



EXTERNAL REVIEW DRAFT - DO NOT COPY, DISTRIBUTE, OR QUOTE

TOXICOLOGICAL REVIEW

OF

BORON AND COMPOUNDS

(CAS No. 7440-42-8)

**In Support of Summary Information on the
Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS)**

April 2002

[Note to Editor: Remove Disclaimer at top and Notice for final reports]

NOTICE

This report is an external draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy. Mention of trade names or commercial products does not constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Washington, DC

NOTICE

This report is an external draft for review purposes only and does not constitute Agency policy. Mention of trade names or commercial products does not constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.

FOREWORD

The purpose of this Toxicological Review is to provide scientific support and rationale for the hazard and dose-response assessment in IRIS pertaining to chronic exposure to boron. It is not intended to be a comprehensive treatise on the chemical or toxicological nature of boron and compounds.

In Section 6, EPA has characterized its overall confidence in the quantitative and qualitative aspects of hazard and dose response. Matters considered in this characterization include knowledge gaps, uncertainties, quality of data, and scientific controversies. This characterization is presented in an effort to make apparent the limitations of the assessment and to aid and guide the risk assessor in the ensuing steps of the risk assessment process.

For other general information about this assessment or other questions relating to IRIS, the reader is referred to EPA's Risk Information Hotline at 513-569-7254.

AUTHORS, CONTRIBUTORS, AND REVIEWERS

Chemical Manager/Author

Carolyn L. Smallwood
National Center for Environmental Assessment
Office of Research and Development
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Cincinnati, Ohio

Contributor

The author would like to acknowledge the following contributors for help with the boron pharmacokinetics and uncertainty.

John Lipscomb
National Center for Environmental Assessment
Office of Research and Development
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Cincinnati, Ohio

Jeffrey Swartout
National Center for Environmental Assessment
Office of Research and Development
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Cincinnati, Ohio

Linda Teuschler
National Center for Environmental Assessment
Office of Research and Development
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
Cincinnati, Ohio

Reviewers

This document and summary information on IRIS have received peer review both by EPA scientists and by independent scientists external to EPA. Subsequent to external review and incorporation of comments, this assessment has undergone an Agency-wide review process whereby the IRIS Program Manager has achieved a consensus approval among the Office of Research and Development; Office of Air and Radiation; Office of Prevention, Pesticides, and Toxic Substances; Office of Solid Waste and Emergency Response; Office of Water; Office of Policy, Planning, and Evaluation; and the Regional Offices.

Internal EPA Reviewers

Mark Greenberg
Physical Scientist
National Center for Environmental Assessment-RTP

AUTHORS, CONTRIBUTORS, AND REVIEWERS cont.

Charles Abernathy
Toxicologist
Office of Water, Office of Science and Technology, Health and Ecological Criteria Division

Henry Spencer
Pharmacologist
Office of Prevention, Pesticides and Toxic Substances, Office of Pesticide Programs
Health Effects Division

William Burnam
Senior Science Advisor
Office of Prevention, Pesticides and Toxic Substances, Office of Pesticide Programs

Mike Ioannou
Toxicologist
Office of Prevention, Pesticides and Toxic Substances, Office of Pesticide Programs
Health Effects Division

Rob Dewoskin
Toxicologist
National Center for Environmental Assessment-RTP

Glenn Suter II
Science Advisor
National Center for Environmental Assessment-Cin

Rick Hertzberg
Mathematical Statistician
National Center for Environmental Assessment-Cin

Linda Teuschler
Mathematical Statistician
National Center for Environmental Assessment-Cin

Glenn Rice
Environmental Health Scientist
National Center for Environmental Assessment-Cin

Carole Kimmel
Senior Scientist
National Center for Environmental Assessment-DC

Femi Adeshina
Toxicologist
National Center for Environmental Assessment-Cin

Chandrika Moudgal
Environmental Health Scientist
National Center for Environmental Assessment-Cin

First External Peer Reviewers

Edward Sowinski
Technical Director
Environmental Health Management and Science, Inc.
Hudson, Ohio

Ernest McConnell
President
ToxPath, Inc
Raleigh, NC

James Withey
Research Scientist (Retired)
Health Protection Branch (Canada)
Ottawa, Ontario

Second External Peer Reviewers

Paul Brubaker
P.E. Brubaker Associates, Inc.
Mendham, NJ

Bonnie Stern
B.R. Stern and Associates
Annandale, VA

Curtis Travis
Vice President
Environmental Risk and Security
Project Performance Corporation
Knoxville, TN

Summaries of the external peer reviewers' comments and the disposition of their recommendations are in Appendix A.

CONTENTS — TOXICOLOGICAL REVIEW for BORON (CAS No. 7440-42-8)

NOTICE	ii
FOREWORD	iii
AUTHORS, CONTRIBUTORS, AND REVIEWERS	iv
1. INTRODUCTION	1
2. CHEMICAL AND PHYSICAL INFORMATION RELEVANT TO ASSESSMENTS	2
3. TOXICOKINETICS RELEVANT TO ASSESSMENTS	4
3.1. ABSORPTION	4
3.1.1. Gastrointestinal Absorption	4
3.1.2. Respiratory Tract Absorption	5
3.1.3. Dermal Absorption	5
3.2. DISTRIBUTION	6
3.3. METABOLISM	8
3.4. ELIMINATION AND EXCRETION	8
3.4.1. Urine	8
3.4.2. Plasma	18
3.4.3. Bone	19
3.5. TOXICOKINETIC SUMMARY	19
4. HAZARD IDENTIFICATION	21
4.1. STUDIES IN HUMANS — EPIDEMIOLOGY, CASE REPORTS, CLINICAL CONTROLS	21
4.1.1. Oral Exposure	21
4.1.2. Inhalation Exposure	22
4.2. PRECHRONIC AND CHRONIC STUDIES AND CANCER BIOASSAYS IN ANIMALS — ORAL AND INHALATION	26
4.2.1. Oral Exposure	26
4.2.2. Inhalation Exposure	31

CONTENTS (continued)

4.3.	REPRODUCTIVE/DEVELOPMENTAL STUDIES — ORAL AND INHALATION	31
4.3.1.	Developmental Studies	31
4.3.2.	Reproductive Studies	35
4.4.	OTHER STUDIES — MAY INCLUDE NEUROLOGICAL, IMMUNOLOGICAL, MECHANISTIC STUDIES (E.G., USE OF ISOLATED TARGET TISSUES/ORGANS, STUDIES OF DIRECT ADMINISTRATION, STUDIES OF KNOWN METABOLITES), GENOTOXICITY, SAR	40
4.4.1.	Genotoxicity Studies	40
4.4.2.	Neurological Studies	41
4.4.3.	Mechanistic Studies - Testicular Effects	41
4.4.4.	Mechanistic Studies - Developmental Effects	42
4.4.5.	Nutrition Studies	42
4.5.	SYNTHESIS AND EVALUATION OF MAJOR NONCANCER EFFECTS AND MODE OF ACTION (IF KNOWN) — ORAL AND INHALATION	43
4.5.1.	Oral Exposure	43
4.5.2.	Inhalation Exposure	43
4.6.	WEIGHT-OF-EVIDENCE EVALUATION AND CANCER CHARACTERIZATION — SYNTHESIS OF HUMAN, ANIMAL, AND OTHER SUPPORTING EVIDENCE, CONCLUSIONS ABOUT HUMAN CARCINOGENICITY, AND LIKELY MODE OF ACTION	44
4.7.	SUSCEPTIBLE POPULATIONS	45
4.7.1.	Possible Childhood Susceptibility	45
4.7.2.	Possible Gender Differences	45
5.	DOSE-RESPONSE ASSESSMENTS	46
5.1.	ORAL REFERENCE DOSE (RfD)	46
5.1.1.	Choice of Principal Study and Critical Effect — with Rationale And Justification	46

CONTENTS (continued)

5.1.2. Methods of Analysis — Including Models (PBPK, BMD, etc.)	46
5.1.3. Derivation of the RFD	47
5.2. INHALATION REFERENCE CONCENTRATION (RfC)	64
5.3. CANCER ASSESSMENT	64
6. MAJOR CONCLUSIONS IN THE CHARACTERIZATION OF HAZARD AND DOSE RESPONSE	64
6.1. HUMAN HAZARD POTENTIAL	64
6.2. DOSE RESPONSE	66
7. REFERENCES	68
APPENDIX A. Summary of and Response to External Peer Review Comments	80
APPENDIX B. Benchmark Dose Calculations	88
APPENDIX C. Regression Analysis of Serum Creatinine and Inulin Clearance	94

1. INTRODUCTION

This document presents background and justification for the hazard and dose-response assessment summaries in EPA's Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS). IRIS summaries may include an oral reference dose (RfD), inhalation reference concentration (RfC) and a carcinogenicity assessment.

The RfD and RfC provide quantitative information for noncancer dose-response assessments. The RfD is based on the assumption that thresholds exist for certain toxic effects such as cellular necrosis, but may not exist for other toxic effects such as some carcinogenic responses. It is expressed in units of mg/kg-day. In general, the RfD is an estimate (with uncertainty spanning perhaps an order of magnitude) of a daily exposure to the human population (including sensitive subgroups) that is likely to be without an appreciable risk of deleterious effects during a lifetime. The inhalation RfC is analogous to the oral RfD. The inhalation RfC considers toxic effects for both the respiratory system (portal-of-entry) and for effects peripheral to the respiratory system (extrarespiratory or systemic effects). It is generally expressed in units of mg/m³.

The carcinogenicity assessment provides information on the carcinogenic hazard potential of the substance in question and quantitative estimates of risk from oral exposure and inhalation exposure. The information includes a weight-of-evidence judgment of the likelihood that the agent is a human carcinogen and the conditions under which the carcinogenic effects may be expressed. Quantitative risk estimates are presented in three ways. The *slope factor* is the result of application of a low-dose extrapolation procedure and is presented as the risk per mg/kg/day. The *unit risk* is the quantitative estimate in terms of either risk per $\mu\text{g/L}$ drinking water or risk per $\mu\text{g/m}^3$ air breathed. Another form in which risk is presented is a drinking water or air concentration providing cancer risks of 1 in 10,000, 1 in 100,000, or 1 in 1,000,000.

Development of these hazard identification and dose-response assessments for boron has followed the general guidelines for risk assessment as set forth by the National Research Council (1983). EPA guidelines that were used in the development of this assessment may include the following: the *Guidelines for Carcinogen Risk Assessment* (U.S. EPA, 1986a), *Guidelines for the Health Risk Assessment of Chemical Mixtures* (U.S. EPA, 1986b), *Guidelines for Mutagenicity Risk Assessment* (U.S. EPA, 1986c), *Guidelines for Developmental Toxicity Risk Assessment* (U.S. EPA, 1991), *Proposed Guidelines for Neurotoxicity Risk Assessment* (U.S. EPA, 1995a), *Guidelines for Neurotoxicity Risk Assessment* (U.S. EPA, 1998), *Proposed Guidelines for Carcinogen Risk Assessment* (1996a), and *Reproductive Toxicity Risk Assessment Guidelines* (U.S. EPA, 1996b); *Recommendations for and Documentation of Biological Values for Use in Risk Assessment* (U.S. EPA, 1988); (proposed) *Interim Policy for Particle Size and Limit Concentration Issues in Inhalation Toxicity* (U.S. EPA, 1994a); *Methods for Derivation of Inhalation Reference Concentrations and Application of Inhalation Dosimetry* (U.S. EPA, 1994b); *Peer Review and Peer Involvement at the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency* (U.S. EPA, 1994c); *Use of the Benchmark Dose Approach in Health Risk Assessment* (U.S. EPA, 1995b); *Science Policy Council Handbook: Peer Review* (U.S. EPA, 1998); and memorandum

1 from EPA Administrator, Carol Browner, dated March 21, 1995, Subject: Guidance on Risk
2 Characterization.

3
4 Literature search strategy employed for this compound was based on the CASRN and at
5 least one common name. At a minimum, the following databases were searched: RTECS,
6 HSDB, TSCATS, CCRIS, GENETOX, EMIC, EMICBACK, DART, ETICBACK, TOXLINE,
7 CANCERLINE, MEDLINE, and MEDLINE backfiles. Any pertinent scientific information
8 submitted by the public to the IRIS Submission Desk was also considered in the development of
9 this document.

10 11 12 13 **2. CHEMICAL AND PHYSICAL INFORMATION RELEVANT TO ASSESSMENTS**

14
15 Boron is a non-metallic element that belongs to Group IIIA of the periodic table and has
16 an oxidation state of +3. It has an atomic number of 5 and atomic weight of 10.81. Boron is
17 actually a mixture of two stable isotopes, ¹⁰B (19.8%) and ¹¹B (80.2%) (WHO, 1998a). The
18 chemical and physical properties of boron and selected boron compounds are shown in Table 1.
19

20 Because boric acid is a weak acid with a pK_a of 9.2, it exists primarily as the
21 undissociated acid (H₃BO₃) in aqueous solution at physiological pH, as do the borate salts
22 (Woods, 1994). Therefore, the toxicity associated with these compounds is expected to be
23 similar based on boron equivalents. Boron oxide will also produce similar effects because it is
24 an anhydride that reacts exothermically with water in the body to form boric acid (WHO, 1998a).
25 Boric acid can form complexes with carbohydrates and proteins in the body (ECETOC, 1994).
26

27 Boric acid and sodium salts of boron (primarily borax, or disodium tetraborate
28 decahydrate) are widely used for a variety of industrial purposes including manufacture of glass,
29 fiberglass insulation, porcelain enamel, ceramic glazes and metal alloys. These compounds are
30 also used as fire retardants in cellulose insulation, laundry additives, fertilizers (boron is an
31 essential element for plants), herbicides (at high concentrations boron is toxic to certain plant
32 species) and insecticides (Woods, 1994). Elemental boron has only limited industrial
33 applications.
34

35 Boron is a naturally-occurring element that is widespread in nature, albeit at relatively
36 low concentrations (Woods, 1994). Boron concentrations in rocks and soils are typically less
37 than 10 ppm, although concentrations as high as 100 ppm have been reported in shales and some
38 soils. The overall average concentration in the earth's crust has been estimated to be 10 ppm.
39 Concentrations reported in sea water range from 0.5 to 9.6 ppm, with an average of 4.6 ppm.
40 Fresh water concentrations range from <0.01 to 1.5 ppm. Boron in the environment is always
41 found chemically bound to oxygen, usually as alkali or alkaline earth borates, or as boric acid
42 (IEHR, 1997; U.S. EPA, 1987). Elemental boron is not found in nature.

Table 1. Physical and Chemical Properties of Boron and Selected Boron Compounds

	Boron	Boric Acid	Borax	Borax Pentahydrate	Anhydrous Borax	Boron Oxide
CAS Registry Number	7440-42-8	10043-35-3	1303-96-4	12179-04-3	1330-43-4	1303-86-2
Molecular Formula	B	H ₃ BO ₃	Na ₂ B ₄ O ₇ ·10H ₂ O	Na ₂ B ₄ O ₇ ·5H ₂ O	Na ₂ B ₄ O ₇	B ₂ O ₃
Molecular Weight	10.81	61.83	381.43	291.35	201.27	69.62
Boron Content (%)	100	17.48	11.34	14.85	21.49	31.06
Physical Form	black crystal or yellow-brown amorphous powder	white or colorless crystalline granules or powder	white or colorless crystalline granules or powder	white or colorless crystalline granules or powder	white or colorless vitreous granules	white or colorless vitreous granules
Specific Gravity (@ 20 °C)	2.34	1.51	1.73	1.81	2.37	2.46
Melting Point (°C)	2300	169	75, decomposes	742	741	450
Boiling Point (°C)	2550	300	320	320	1575, decomposes	1500
Water Solubility (% w/w)	insoluble	4.72 @ 20 °C 27.53 @ 100 °C	4.71 @ 20 °C 65.63 @ 100 °C	3.6 @ 20 °C 50.15 @ 100 °C	2.48 @ 20 °C 34.5 @ 100 °C	rapidly hydrates to boric acid
Vapor Pressure (mm Hg)	1.56 x 10 ⁻⁵ atm @ 2140 °C	No Data	No Data	No Data	No Data	No Data

Sources: ATSDR, 1992; ECETOC, 1994; U.S. EPA, 1987; WHO, 1998a

1 Boron is not transformed or degraded in the environment, but depending on
2 environmental conditions (e.g., pH, moisture level), changes in the specific form of boron and its
3 transport can occur (ATSDR, 1992). Natural weathering is expected to be a significant source of
4 environmental boron (ATSDR, 1992). The most important source of exposure for human
5 populations is ingestion of boron from food (primarily fruits and vegetables) (Anderson et al.,
6 1994; Naghii and Samman, 1996a; WHO, 1998a). Occupational exposure to borate dust and
7 exposure to borates in consumer products (e.g., cosmetics, medicines, insecticides) are other
8 potentially significant sources.
9

10 11 12 **3. TOXICOKINETICS RELEVANT TO ASSESSMENTS**

13 14 **3.1. ABSORPTION**

15 16 **3.1.1. Gastrointestinal Absorption**

17
18 Boron is well absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract in humans. Schou et al. (1984)
19 administered approximately 131 mg B as boric acid in both water (750 mg) and water-
20 emulsifying ointment (740-1473 mg, approximately 130-258 mg B) to 6 volunteers and found
21 that an average of 92-94% of administered boron was excreted in the urine within 96 hours,
22 indicating that at least that much had been absorbed in that time. Although there was no
23 significant difference in cumulative excretion for the two different vehicles, it was noted that
24 excretion in the first 2-hour sampling period was lower using the ointment, suggesting delayed
25 absorption of boron from the ointment in comparison to the water vehicle. Similarly, two
26 women who ingested approximately 62 mg B as boric acid (in addition to 80-140 mg of boron in
27 food) excreted greater than 90% of ingested boron in the urine in the first week after dosing
28 (Kent and McCance, 1941). Volunteers (n=10) who drank spa waters containing approximately
29 100 mg daily dose of boron for 2 weeks were also determined to have had over 90% absorption
30 of boron based on urinary excretion data (Job, 1973). Naghii et al. (1977) studied the effect of
31 boron supplementation (10 mg B/d) into the normal diet of male volunteers (n=8).
32 Supplementation of the 10 mg B/day for 4 weeks resulted in 84% recovery in the urine.
33

34 Studies in animals have shown that boron is readily absorbed following oral exposure in
35 rats (Ku et al., 1991; Usuda et al., 1998), rabbits (Draize and Kelley, 1959), sheep (Brown et al.,
36 1989) and cattle (Owen, 1944; Weeth et al., 1981). Using mass spectrometry and the boron-10
37 isotope, Vanderpool et al. (1994) showed that fasted rats fed 20 µg of ¹⁰B in the diet eliminated
38 95% of the ¹⁰B in the urine and 4% in the feces within 3 days of dosing, producing a 77%
39 increase in the ratio of ¹⁰B to ¹¹B in the urine. Moreover, ¹⁰B in the liver peaked within 3 hours
40 of dosing with over 90% recovery and a 56% increase in ¹⁰B:¹¹B ratio, which returned to normal
41 within 24 hours. This result suggests that >90% of orally administered boron is absorbed from
42 the gastrointestinal tract within 3 hours, and that absorption is complete within 24 hours.
43

3.1.2. Respiratory Tract Absorption

Boron is absorbed during inhalation exposure. Culver et al. (1994) monitored boron levels in the blood and urine of workers exposed to borate dust (borax, borax pentahydrate and anhydrous borax) at a borax production facility. The workers were divided into three groups according to borate exposure. Workers in both the medium and high exposure categories had significantly increased levels of boron in the blood after working Monday ($\approx 0.25 \mu\text{g/g}$) in comparison to pre-shift Monday morning values ($\approx 0.1 \mu\text{g/g}$). Similarly, workers in the high exposure category had significantly higher urinary boron levels Monday post-shift ($\approx 12 \mu\text{g/mg}$ creatinine) than pre-shift ($\approx 2 \mu\text{g/mg}$ creatinine). Boron in the diets (which were assigned by the researchers to ensure uniformity among workers) and workplace air was also monitored during this study. A higher proportion of total boron intake was from air than from diet, and both blood and urine boron were best modeled based on air concentration of boron alone (i.e., inclusion of dietary boron as an independent variable did not increase the predictive power of the models). These data show that boron was absorbed during the work day, and that borate dust in the air was the source of the additional boron in the blood and urine. However, it is not clear what amount of the inhaled boron was actually absorbed through the respiratory tract. The researchers speculated that due to the large size of the dust particles in the work area, most of the inhaled borate would have been deposited in the upper respiratory tract, where it could have been absorbed directly through the mucous membranes or could have been cleared by mucociliary activity and swallowed.

Similar evidence of absorption of airborne boron in rats was obtained by Wilding et al. (1959), who monitored urinary boron levels in rats exposed to aerosols of boron oxide (average concentration of 77 mg/m^3). Urinary boron was much higher in exposed rats than controls throughout the 22-week exposure period (average of 11.90 vs. 0.24 mg B/kg-day) and quickly reverted to control levels following cessation of exposure. These data show that inhalation exposure to boron oxide particulate produced high levels of urinary boron, but do not rule out a contribution by gastrointestinal absorption of particles transported from the upper respiratory tract by mucociliary activity. No toxic effects were observed.

3.1.3. Dermal Absorption

Boron is apparently not absorbed across intact skin. Draize and Kelley (1959) found no increase in urinary boron in a volunteer given topical application of powdered boric acid (15 g) to the forearm and held under occlusion for 4 hours. Friis-Hansen et al. (1982) reported no evidence of boron absorption in 22 newborn infants treated dermally with ointment containing 3% boric acid for 4-5 days (total dose of approximately 16 mg B); plasma boron levels fell over the 5-day study period as expected for neonates, and did not differ from 10 untreated controls. Vignec and Ellis (1954) found minimal difference in blood or urinary boron levels in twelve 1-10 month old infants exposed to talcum powder containing 5% boric acid 7-10 times per day for at least one month (estimated daily dose of $2.33 \text{ g boric acid}$ or 407 mg B) compared with an equal number of untreated controls. An additional group of 12 infants with mild to moderate diaper rash during the test period were continued on the powder regimen for 48-72 hours after rashes appeared. Their boron blood levels were similar to controls. However, there is evidence

1 that boron will be absorbed through more severely damaged skin, at least from an aqueous
2 vehicle. Blood and urinary boron levels were increased in 6 male volunteers with severe skin
3 conditions (e.g., psoriasis, eczema, urticaria) following topical application of an aqueous jelly
4 containing 3% boric acid (Stuttgen et al., 1982). However, urinary boron levels did not increase
5 in skin-damaged volunteers given 3% boric acid in an emulsifying ointment.
6

7 Studies in laboratory animals have produced similar results. Boron was not absorbed
8 across intact or mildly abraded skin in rabbits topically administered boric acid as the undiluted
9 powder or at 5% in talc or aqueous solution (1.5 hr/day under occlusion for 4 days; 10-15% of
10 body surface exposed) (Draize and Kelley, 1959). However, boron was readily absorbed across
11 severely damaged skin in rabbits, and in proportion to the exposure concentration. Rats with
12 intact skin treated topically with 3% boric acid (ointment or aqueous jelly) did not absorb boron,
13 but urinary boron was increased 4- to 8-fold (to 1% of dose) following exposure to boric acid
14 oleaginous ointment and 34-fold (to 23% of dose) following exposure to aqueous boric acid in
15 rats with damaged skin (Nielsen, 1970).
16

17 **3.2. DISTRIBUTION**

18

19 Available studies suggest that boric acid and borate compounds in the body exist
20 primarily as undissociated boric acid, which distributes evenly throughout the soft tissues of the
21 body. Lack of appreciable accumulation of boron in the testis was demonstrated by Lee et al.
22 (1978) and Treinen and Chapin (1991), and in the epididymis by Treinen and Chapin (1991).
23 Ku et al. (1991) studied tissue distribution in male rats fed 9000 ppm of boric acid (1575 ppm
24 boron) for 7 days. The authors estimated the 9000 ppm dose to be 93-96 mg B/kg-day. The
25 tissue levels of boron on day 7 of exposure are listed in Table 2. Boron levels in all tissues
26 except adipose increased rapidly after the start of exposure (2- to 20-fold increase over controls
27 after 1 day). The greatest increase (20-fold) was in bone. Levels in adipose tissue increased
28 only 1.3-fold. Boron levels in plasma and soft tissues other than adipose tissue reached steady-
29 state (12-30 µg/g) within 3-4 days. Variability in levels of boron in all tissues except adipose
30 tissue and bone were approximately 2-fold for any given day of examination (days 1,2,3,4,7).
31 Levels in bone and adipose continued to increase throughout the 7-day study period. In
32 comparison to plasma levels, there was no appreciable accumulation of boron in any soft tissue.
33 However, boron did accumulate in bone, showing a 2- to 3-fold increase over plasma levels after
34 7 days. Accumulation of boron in bone in rats was also shown by Forbes and Mitchell (1957).
35 Boron levels in adipose tissue remained at 20% of plasma levels after 7 days.
36

37 In a follow-up to Ku et al. (1991), Chapin et al. (1997) monitored bone boron
38 concentrations in rats fed 200-9000 ppm of boric acid for 9-12 weeks. Bone boron was
39 significantly increased over controls at 200 ppm and increased proportionally up to 6000 ppm,
40 above which the increase in bone was slightly less than the increase in the feed. Bone boron
41 levels reached steady state within 1 week at doses up to 3000 ppm and after approximately 4
42 weeks at higher doses. Steady-state bone boron levels were approximately 4-fold greater than
43 serum boron levels.

Table 2. Tissue Levels of Boron in Male Rats on Day 7 of Exposure to 9000 ppm Boric Acid (1575 ppm Boron) in the Diet (μg boron/g tissue)

Tissue	Control	Day 7
Plasma	1.94 \pm 0.17	16.00 \pm 0.71
Liver	0.66 \pm 0.10	13.13 \pm 0.54
Kidney	1.55 \pm 0.03	19.80 \pm 1.65
Adipose	1.71 \pm 0.17	3.78 \pm 0.13
Muscle	3.69 \pm 0.54	14.23 \pm 0.19
Bone	1.17 \pm 0.19	47.40 \pm 1.14
Large Intestine ^a	3.08 \pm 0.17	14.90 \pm 0.7
Brain	0.76 \pm 0.02	13.50 \pm 0.86
Hypothalamus ^b	0.91	14.30
Testis	0.97 \pm 0.10	16.00 \pm 1.19
Epididymis ^a	0.81 \pm 0.15	16.81 \pm 3.7
Seminal vesicles ^a	1.64 \pm 0.23	23.70 \pm 6.56
Seminal vesicle fluid ^b	2.05	19.20
Adrenals ^b	7.99	21.90
Prostate ^b	1.20	14.80

Source: Ku et al., 1991

Note: Values are means \pm SE: N = 3 animals unless indicated by footnote

^a Mean \pm SE N = 3 samples, each sample represents a pool of tissue from two animals

^b A single sample was analyzed representing a pool from six animals

1 In a drinking water study using multiple dose levels of boric acid in rats, Naghii and
2 Samman (1996b) found, like Ku et al. (1991), that levels of boron in soft tissues were very
3 similar to levels in plasma (the only exception being a 1.5- to 2-fold increase in the kidney that
4 may have been due to contamination with urine because the organ was not perfused prior to
5 analysis). These researchers also found that boron plasma and tissue levels increased
6 proportionally with dose. Bone was not analyzed in this study. WHO (1998a) reported a
7 preliminary comparison of blood boron levels across species in rats exposed to boron in the diet
8 or drinking water and humans exposed in the diet, drinking water or accidental ingestion. Rat
9 and human blood boron levels had a good overlap in the dose range of 0.01-100 mg B/kg body
10 weight. Locksley and Sweet (1954) found that concentration of boron in the tissues was directly
11 proportional to dose over a range of 1.8-71 mg B/kg in mice given borax by intraperitoneal
12 injection.

13
14 Evidence that boron does not accumulate in the blood in humans was obtained by Culver
15 et al. (1994). These researchers found no progressive accumulation of boron across the work
16 week as measured by blood and urine levels in mine workers.

17 18 **3.3. METABOLISM**

19
20 Boron is a trace element for which essentiality is suspected but has not been directly
21 proven in humans (Nielsen, 1991,1992,1994; NRC, 1989; Hunt, 1994; Mertz, 1993). Boron
22 deprivation studies with animals and three human clinical studies have shown that boron affects
23 macromineral and cellular metabolism of other substances that affect life processes such as
24 calcium and magnesium (Section 4.4.4. Nutrition Studies).

25
26 Inorganic borate compounds are present as boric acid in the body. Boric acid is the only
27 boron compound that has been identified in urine, and it has repeatedly been found to account
28 for >90% of the ingested boron dose (WHO, 1998a). There is no evidence that boric acid is
29 degraded in the body. Metabolism may not be feasible because a large amount of energy is
30 apparently required to break the boron-oxygen bond (WHO, 1998a). Boric acid can form
31 complexes with various biomolecules (IEHR, 1997; WHO, 1998a). It has an affinity for
32 hydroxyl, amino and thiol groups. Complex formation is concentration dependent and
33 reversible.

34 35 **3.4. ELIMINATION AND EXCRETION**

36 37 **3.4.1. Urine**

38
39 The elimination and excretion of boron have been evaluated in humans and rodents, and
40 have demonstrated that more than 90% of an orally administered dose of boric acid is excreted
41 unchanged in the urine a short time after treatment (see Section 3.1.1. for descriptions of several
42 such studies). In humans, Jansen et al. (1984a) and Schou et al. (1984) reported that boron's
43 primary route of elimination was in the urine, and that approximately 93% of an orally
44 administered dose is eliminated within 96 hours. Jansen et al. (1984b) reported that
45 approximately 60-75% of an orally administered dose of 750 mg boric acid (131 mg B) in a

1 water solution or 740-1473 mg boric acid (129.5-261.3 mg B) in a water emulsifying ointment,
2 to humans is eliminated in urine over the initial 24 hours, with the urinary route of elimination
3 accounting for 93% of the dose at 96 hours post administration. Astier et al. (1988) reported an
4 acute boron intoxication of 45 g boric acid (7.9 g B) where >50% of the dose was eliminated
5 through the kidneys over the first day following ingestion (renal clearance: 0.77 L/hour; tubular
6 reabsorption: 80%; total clearance 10.5 g). Kent and McCance (1941) also reported that 92-93%
7 of an administered oral dose (352 mg as boric acid) in humans was eliminated in urine during the
8 first week following administration. Additional minor elimination pathways include saliva,
9 sweat and feces (Jansen et al., 1984a).

10
11 Following an intravenous dose in humans of 28.52-31.9 mg boric acid (5-5.6 mg B) per
12 minute or a total dose per subject of 520-620 mg boric acid (91-108.5 mg B), high volumes of
13 distribution were reported by Jansen et al. (1984a), who also reported that boron's primary route
14 of elimination was in the urine. When quantified over 120 hours, the fraction of dose eliminated
15 in urine accounted for 98.7±9.1% of administered dose. Urinary elimination of boron in humans
16 occurs rapidly and is the primary route of elimination. These data indicate almost total
17 bioavailability of an orally administered boron dose in the human.

18
19 The urinary elimination of boron administered to male rats has been investigated
20 following the oral administration of sodium tetraborate (at 11 different doses ranging from 0-4
21 mg B/kg) by Usuda et al. (1998). The recovery of boron in 24-hour urine accounted for
22 99.6±9.7% of the administered dose, demonstrating essentially total bioavailability of an orally
23 administered boron dose in rats. In a study conducted in rats with stable-labeled boron,
24 Vanderpool et al. (1994) reported that 95% of the administered (20 µg/kg) dose was eliminated
25 in the urine and 4% in the feces over the initial 3 days post-dosing.

26
27 Urinary elimination of boric acid in Sprague-Dawley female rats (non-pregnant and
28 pregnant) was examined in a pharmacokinetic study sponsored by U.S. Borax at the University
29 of California, Irvine (U.S. Borax, 2000 rat study; Vaziri et al., 2001). Three groups of 10 non-
30 pregnant and 10-11 pregnant rats were started on an initial 7-day supplemented boron diet on
31 gestation day 9, prior to gavage administration of boric acid. According to the authors the
32 purpose of this initial 7-day diet was to achieve steady state conditions for rats given a diet
33 comparable to that ingested by humans in terms of boron. This supplemented boron diet given
34 during the initial 7-days was designed to deliver a dose of approximately 0.3 mg/kg/day of boric
35 acid or 0.05 mgB/kg/day. On the morning of the eighth day, the diet for all rats was switched to
36 the low boron casein diet containing 0.2 mg B/kg diet for a total of 24 hours. The low boron
37 casein based diet was used in this study to minimize cross contamination of the urine with boron
38 in the diet and to minimize the dietary contribution of boron on the day of gavage. After the
39 initial 24 hours on the low casein diet, groups of pregnant and non-pregnant rats were given a
40 single oral dose of 0.3, 3.0 or 30 mg/kg of boric acid (0.052, 0.52, and 5.2 mgB/kg, respectively)
41 by gavage in deionized water (ultrapure). The purpose of the choice of some of the doses in this
42 study, given by the authors were as follows: the low dose was chosen as an estimate of the high
43 end human dietary dose level, the highest dose tested was approximately half of the NOAEL
44 from the rat developmental toxicity study (Price et al., 1996a).

1 Two blood samples were drawn from each rat. The first sample was taken 3 hours after
2 gavage dosing on the assumption that the peak boron concentration in the blood had been
3 achieved (based on data from Usuda et al., 1998). The second blood sample was taken 12 hours
4 after the initial sample. Rats were placed in metabolic cages after the first blood sample was
5 taken and urine was collected during the 12 hours between the first and second blood sampling.
6

7 The urinary concentration of boron at the high dose was significantly higher in pregnant
8 rats compared with nonpregnant rats but not at the low and mid dose. The concentration of
9 boron in the urine during the 12 hour collection period in the non-pregnant rats was 1.67 ± 0.62
10 10.12 ± 8.16 and 66.82 ± 47.00 $\mu\text{g B/mL}$ for the low, mid and high dose respectively and in the
11 pregnant rats 1.62 ± 0.49 , 12.30 ± 5.12 and 121.45 $\mu\text{g B/mL}$ in the low, mid and high dose
12 respectively. The urine volume was not significantly different in pregnant and non-pregnant rats.
13 The amount of boron ($\mu\text{g}/12$ hours) excreted in the urine increased proportionately with
14 increasing dose and during the 12-hour collection period was higher (32-73%) in pregnant rats
15 compared to the non-pregnant rats in the high dose level. This was attributed by the authors to
16 the higher dose of boron administered to pregnant rats due to their larger body weight and to the
17 higher fractional excretion of boron (boric acid clearance/creatinine clearance) in the pregnant
18 rats which was statistically significant at the high dose level. The percentage of administered
19 dose of boric acid recovered in the urine was significantly higher in the low dose group
20 compared to the mid and high dose groups for both the non-pregnant and pregnant animals and
21 higher in the pregnant compared to the non-pregnant rats across dose groups which was
22 statistically significant at the high dose only (see urinary data in Table 3). Although the boron
23 diet used for this study was low, it still contributed to the overall dose of boric acid and these
24 amounts were not included in the nominal dose levels. When dietary contribution from the low
25 boron diet are included in the dose, the actual dose levels were approximately 0.4, 3.1 and 30.1
26 mg/kg boric acid. At the low dose the diet contributed another 27% and 33% to the overall dose
27 given to non-pregnant and pregnant rats respectively, whereas at the mid and high doses, the diet
28 contributed 3% and 0.3% respectively to the total dose. The authors suggest the incremental
29 increase at the low dose may explain in part the greater recovery of administered dose in the low
30 dose group.
31

32 Clearance rates of boric acid, creatinine and urea were expressed in three different ways
33 mL/min, mL/min/kg of body weight and mL/min/cm² of body surface area (see Table 4). Boric
34 acid clearance was independent of dose within the range of dose levels tested. Boron clearance
35 was slightly higher in pregnant rats compared to non-pregnant rats but the difference was not
36 statistically significant. The rate of creatinine clearance did not vary significantly with the
37 different doses of boric acid in either non-pregnant or pregnant rats. Creatinine clearance,
38 normalized against body weight, however was significantly greater in non-pregnant rats
39 compared to pregnant rats. Urea clearance was not significantly different between non-pregnant
40 and pregnant rats. And there were no consistent differences in the rate of urea clearance with the
41 different doses of boric acid. Individual rat boron clearance data for pregnant and non-pregnant
42 rats are presented in Table 5 and Table 6 respectively.
43

44 Fractional excretion of boron which is defined as the ratio of boron clearance/creatinine
45 clearance was 65% and 80% in non-pregnant and pregnant rats, respectively. Fractional

1 excretion of urea was lower in non-pregnant rats than in pregnant rats. The authors indicated
2 that

Table 3. Urinary Boron Concentration, Volume, Mean Excretion, and Percent Recovered in 12 Hours in Non-Pregnant and Pregnant Rats Given Boric Acid by Gavage^a

Dose (mg BA/kg/day)	Urinary B (µg/mL)		Urine Volume (mL)		12-hr Urinary B Excretion (µg/12 hr)		Percent of Dose in 12-Hr Urine (3-15 Hr)	
	Non-pregnant ^b	Pregnant ^b	Non-pregnant	Pregnant	Non-pregnant ^b	Pregnant ^b	Non-pregnant ^{b,c}	Pregnant ^{b,c}
0.3	1.7±0.6 ^d (9)	1.6±0.5 (9)	4.3±1.4 (9)	6.1±3.2 (9)	6±1 ^d (9)	8±3 (9)	50.4±10.6% ^d (9)	55.6±21.4% (9)
3.0	10.1±8.2 (10)	12.3±5.1 (9)	5.2±3.4 (10)	5.3±2.4 (9)	32±7 (10)	56±16 (9)	24.6±4.5% (10)	35.6±9.4% (9)
30.0	66.8±47.0 (10)	121.4±47.1 ^c (11)	6.8±3.9 (10)	5.4±2.5 (11)	324±61 (10)	561±114 ^c (11)	24.6±4.3% (10)	34.7±6.4% ^c (11)

^a Source: U.S. Borax, 2000; Vaziri et al., 2001

^b Statistically significant difference in urinary boron concentration across dose levels based on two-way ANOVA, p<0.05

^c Statistically significant difference across groups (non-pregnant vs. pregnant) based on two-way ANOVA, p<0.05

^d Mean ± standard deviation (number of rats)

^e Statistically significant difference between non-pregnant and pregnant rats based on multiple range test, p<0.05

Table 4. Clearance of Boric Acid (BA) Creatinine and Urea in Non-Pregnant and Pregnant Rats Given Boric Acid by Gavage expressed as mL/min, mL/min/cm² and mL/min/kg^a

Dose (mg BA/kg)	Boric Acid Clearance (mL/min)		Creatinine Clearance (mL/min)		Urea Clearance (mL/min)	
	Non-pregnant ^b	Pregnant ^b	Non-pregnant	Pregnant	Non-pregnant	Pregnant
0.3	0.77±0.2 ^c (9)	1.01±0.2 (9)	1.3±0.4 ^c (9)	1.3±0.5 (9)	0.85±0.2 (9)	0.89±0.3 (9)
3.0	0.76±0.2 (10)	0.95±0.2 (9)	1.2±0.4 (10)	1.3±0.4 (9)	0.84±0.3 (10)	1.14±0.4 (9)
30.0	0.81±0.1 (10)	1.07±0.2 ^d (11)	1.3±0.4 (10)	1.3±0.3 (11)	0.96±0.3 (10)	1.10±0.3 (11)
expressed as mL/min/cm ²						
0.3	0.0017±0.0004 (9)	0.0020±0.0004 (9)	0.0029±0.0007 (9)	0.0025±0.0009 (9)	0.0019±0.0005 (9)	0.0017±0.0005 (9)
3.0	0.0017±0.0003 (10)	0.0019±0.0003 (9)	0.0027±0.0008 (10)	0.0025±0.0006 (9)	0.0018±0.0006 (10)	0.0022±0.0008 (9)
30.0	0.0018±0.0003 (10)	0.0020±0.0003 (11)	0.0029±0.0008 (10)	0.0025±0.0006 (11)	0.0021±0.0006 (10)	0.0021±0.0004 (11)
expressed as mL/min/kg						
0.3	3.1±0.8 (9)	3.3±0.6 (9)	5.2±1.1 ^b (9)	4.3±1.5 ^b (9)	3.4±0.9 (9)	2.9±0.9 (9)
3.0	3.0±0.6 (10)	3.2±0.5 (9)	4.8±1.3 ^b (10)	4.2±1.1 ^b (9)	3.3±1.1 (10)	3.8±1.3 (9)
30.0	3.2±0.5 (10)	3.4±0.5 (11)	5.3±1.6 ^b (10)	4.3±1.0 ^b (11)	3.8±1.0 (10)	3.5±0.7 (11)

^a Source: U.S. Borax, 2000; Vaziri et al., 2001

^b Statistically significant difference across groups (non-pregnant vs. pregnant) based on two-way ANOVA, p<0.05

^c Mean ± standard deviation (number of rats)

^d Statistically significant difference between non-pregnant and pregnant rats based on multiple range test, p<0.05

Table 5. Urinary Clearance of Boron in Pregnant Rats^a

0.3 mg/kg/day^{b, c}	3.0 mg/kg/day^{b, c}	30.0 mg/kg day^{b, c}	Combined^c
not pregnant	2.954	3.329	
3.714	2.532	2.670	
4.443	--	3.089	
3.592	3.822	2.849	
3.447	3.784	2.996	
2.983	3.564	3.574	
3.023	3.064	3.957	
3.109	2.640	3.757	
2.499	3.116	4.103	
3.114	2.978	4.101	
		3.075	
3.325 ^e	3.162 ^e	3.409 ^e	3.306 ^e
0.56 (9) ^{d, f}	0.47 (9) ^f	0.52 (11) ^f	0.506 (29) ^f

^a Adapted from U.S. Borax (2000 rat study) and Vaziri et al. (2001)

^b Dose is presented as mg boric acid/kg/day.

^c Results presented as mL/min/kg body mass.

^d N values are presented in parentheses.

^e Mean

^f Standard deviation

1 **Table 6. Urinary Clearance of Boron in Non- Pregnant Rats^a**
 2

3 0.3	3 3.0	3 30.0	3 Combined^c
4 mg/kg/day^{b, c}	4 mg/kg/day^{b, c}	4 mg/kg day^{b, c}	
5 3.02	5 3.422	5 2.896	
6 4.073	6 2.982	6 3.927	
7 3.423	7 2.823	7 3.203	
8 3.717	8 3.368	8 2.647	
9 3.161	9 3.176	9 3.252	
10 3.428	10 3.010	10 3.213	
11 3.396	11 3.338	11 3.691	
12 1.651	12 3.002	12 3.834	
13 2.013	13 3.642	13 2.579	
14 died	14 1.514	14 3.106	
15 3.098 ^e	15 3.028 ^e	15 3.235 ^e	15 3.121 ^e
16 0.78 (9) ^{d, f}	16 0.59 (10) ^{d, f}	16 0.47 (10) ^{d, f}	16 0.603 (29) ^{d, f}

17
 18 ^a Adapted from U.S. Borax (2000 rat study) and Vaziri et al. (2001)

19
 20 ^b Dose is presented as mg boric acid/kg/day.

21
 22 ^c Results presented as mL/min/kg body mass.

23
 24 ^d N values are presented in parentheses.

25
 26 ^e Mean

27
 28 ^f Standard deviation

1 increased fractional excretion of boron in pregnant rats may be related to physical factors
2 associated with normal pregnancy due to extracellular volume expansion and renal vasodilation.
3

4 A human study to measure renal clearance of boron normally consumed in the daily diet
5 in non-pregnant and pregnant women was conducted (U.S. Borax, 2000; Pahl et al., 2001). This
6 study was conducted in 32 women in good health between the ages of 18-40 years. Sixteen
7 women in their second trimester (14-28 weeks) were chosen for this study. Sixteen age-matched
8 non-pregnant women were also chosen for this study. At the beginning of the study all subjects
9 were asked to empty their bladder and a baseline blood sample was taken. Urine for each subject
10 was pooled during the 2 hours following the initial blood samples. At the end of this 2 hours
11 another blood sample was taken. The subjects were asked to collect all urine for the next 22
12 hours (24 hours from the baseline). A 24 hour blood sample was also collected. Although all
13 subjects were asked to record their 24 hour dietary intake, the subjects in the study provided
14 incomplete dietary information. The authors stated that estimates of dietary intake provided
15 from food frequency questionnaires are of limited accuracy. Boron intake was estimated from
16 the renal excretion of boron in 24 hours which was 1.3 mgB/day, from which an average
17 consumption was estimated at 0.02 mgB/kg per day.
18

19 Urine for each subject was pooled over the initial 2 hour period and over the subsequent
20 22-hour period. Boron content of blood and pooled urine was analyzed via inductively coupled
21 plasma-mass spectrometry (ICPMS) by a contract laboratory following scrutinized laboratory
22 analytical standards and practices and employing adequate quality control measures. Urinary
23 clearance was measured by quantifying the amount of boron (mg) in the urine and blood. There
24 are two sets of data for boron clearance in this study. The first is the 2 hour clearance data where
25 the urine was collected in the clinic to insure complete collection. The second data set on boron
26 clearance from this study is a 24 hour clearance value that combines the 2 hour clearance value
27 with the 22 hour clearance value. The 22 hour clearance samples were not collected onsite. The
28 2 hour clearance values are presented in this document because they were considered to be more
29 accurate due to the compliance with the collection while at the clinic. The urinary clearance of
30 boron in humans was determined in all individuals and presented as mL blood cleared of boron
31 per minute per kg body mass (Table 7). The results indicated that the clearance rate for boron in
32 pregnant women was 1.02 ± 0.55 (mean \pm standard deviation; range 0.252-2.028 mL/min/kg) and
33 the clearance rate for boron in non-pregnant women was 0.80 ± 0.31 (mean \pm standard deviation;
34 range 0.229-1.358 mL/min/kg) mL/min/kg body mass (see Table 8). These results indicate that
35 pregnant women clear boron more effectively than non-pregnant women. These results are
36 consistent with increased measures of renal function in humans during pregnancy.
37

38 Creatinine clearance was normal in all subjects and comparable in pregnant and non-
39 pregnant women. Comparison of the clearance of boron with creatinine gives insight into
40 tubular handling of boron. The authors indicated that the ratio of boron clearance to creatinine
41 clearance (fractional excretion of boron) indicates tubular reabsorption if the ratio is <1 and
42 tubular secretion if the ratio is >1 . The fractional excretion of boron in all the women in the
43 study was <1 . According to the authors this indicated tubular reabsorption in both non-pregnant
44 and pregnant women. There was a trend toward increased fractional excretion or reduced
45 tubular

Table 7. Urinary Clearance of Boron in Women at 2 Hours^a

Non-pregnant^b	Pregnant^b
0.826	0.399
0.229	0.252
0.394	1.429
0.319	0.332
0.868	2.028
0.699	1.759
1.358	1.362
0.887	1.246
0.838	0.537
1.176	1.463
0.888	0.713
0.958	0.809
0.949	0.833
0.775	1.420
no sample	0.706
no sample	no sample
0.80 ^c	1.02 ^c
0.31 ^d	0.55 ^d

^a Adapted from U.S. Borax (2000 human study)

^b Data are presented as mL blood cleared of boron per minute per kg body mass.

^c Mean

^d Standard deviation

1 **Table 8. Clearance of Boron in Pregnant and Non-Pregnant Rats and Humans**
 2

Species	Dose ^a	Boron Clearance (mL/min/kg)	
		Pregnant	Non-Pregnant
Rat ^b	0.3 mg/kg/day	3.36 ± 0.6 (9) ^c	3.10 ± 0.78 (9)
	3.0 mg/kg/day	3.2 ± .05 (9)	3.02 ± 0.59 (10)
	30.0 mg/kg/day	3.4 ± 0.5 (9)	3.24 ± 0.47 (10)
	Combined	3.3 ± 0.51 (29)	3.12 ± 0.60 (29)
Humans ^d	0.114 mg/kg/day ^e	1.02 ± 0.55 (15)	0.80 ± 0.31 (14)

9
 10 ^a Dose is presented as mg boric acid/kg/day
 11

12 ^b Data adapted from U.S. Borax (2000 rat study)
 13

14 ^c Data are presented as mean ± standard deviation (n).
 15

16 ^d Data adapted from U.S. Borax (2000 human study)
 17

18 ^e Dietary intake was estimated by U.S. Borax (2000 human study) as 0.02 mg boron/kg/day
 19 (equivalent to 0.114 mg boric acid/kg/day)

1 reabsorption in pregnant women, however the difference between the fractional excretion of
2 pregnant and non-pregnant women was not statistically significant. In the rat clearance study
3 (U.S. Borax, 2000; Vaziri et al., 2001) pregnant rats showed increased fractional excretion of
4 boron at all dose levels. Using the data from the rat and the human renal clearance study,
5 clearance of boric acid in pregnant rats and pregnant humans can be compared. Table 8 shows
6 boron clearance for pregnant women and pregnant rats. The observations from all rat dose
7 groups were combined, as there were no dose-related differences in the clearance values.
8

9 **3.4.2. Plasma**

10
11 In a study conducted with human volunteers and carefully administered doses of 570-620
12 mg boric acid (91-108.5 mg B), plasma concentration-time curves were followed over 3 days
13 and were markedly biphasic. Terminal elimination half-lives were calculated for individuals
14 (n=6) and demonstrated a range of 12.5-26.6 hours and a mean value of 21.0 ± 4.9 hours when
15 calculated from the data collected over the initial 72 hours post-dose (Jansen et al., 1984a). From
16 this study a total mean volume of distribution of 104.7 mL/100 g body weight can be calculated
17 A second study reported by Litovitz et al. (1988) investigated incidences of boron poisoning.
18 Although this study did not document many important data (dose, time post-dose that
19 examination began, number of concentrations used to estimate half-lives, etc.), the range of half-
20 lives compares favorably with the well-controlled study presented by Jansen et al. (1984a).
21 When linear regression analysis was used to fit the plasma concentration data, estimates of half-
22 lives ranged from 4.0 to 27.8 hours, with an overall mean value of 13.4 ± 7.1 hours. Astier (1988)
23 reported a plasma half-life of 28.7 hours after acute ingestion of 45 g boric acid (7.9 g B) in two
24 doses over a 20-hour period.
25

26 A pharmacokinetic study (Usuda et al., 1998) in 10 rats following an oral administration
27 of sodium tetra-borate containing 0.4 mg boron/100g body weight where 0.5-1 mL samples were
28 drawn at nine different times during a 24-hour time period reported a monophasic elimination of
29 boron from plasma, demonstrating a plasma half-life mean of 4.64 ± 1.19 . This study also cited a
30 high volume of distribution of 142.0 ± 30.2 mL/100 g body weight. One of the limitations of this
31 study is that a large amount of blood was drawn from the rats in the 24 hour period which may
32 have physiologically compromised the rats.
33

34 A human study (U.S. Borax, 2000; Pahl et al., 2001) was conducted to measure renal
35 clearance of boron normally consumed in the daily diet in non-pregnant and pregnant women
36 (see description of the study in Section 3.4.1.). At the beginning of the study a baseline blood
37 sample was taken. During the 2 hours following the baseline blood sample all urine samples
38 were collected. Blood samples were drawn at 2 hours and 24 hours after the baseline blood
39 samples. Plasma boron levels were measured at these three time periods. Mean plasma boron
40 levels obtained at baseline and 2 hours after the beginning of the study were similar between the
41 pregnant and non-pregnant subjects. After 24 hours plasma boron levels were lower in the
42 pregnant women when compared with non-pregnant women, however there was a significant
43 variability in the plasma values in both groups.
44

1 In a plasma clearance study of boron sponsored by U. S. Borax (Vaziri et al., 2001) in
2 pregnant and non-pregnant rats given boric acid at dose levels of 0.3, 3.0 and 30 mg boric acid,
3 plasma concentrations of boron were markedly lower 15 hours after dosing compared with that
4 obtained 3 hours after dosing (see description of studies in Section 3.4.1.). Mean plasma levels
5 of boron were slightly higher in pregnant rats compared with non-pregnant rats (statistically
6 significant in only the high dose) given the same dose of boric acid.
7

8 In a study (U.S. Borax, 2000; Vaziri et al., 2001) conducted to estimate the plasma half-
9 life of boric acid in the Sprague-Dawley rat, six non-pregnant and six pregnant rats were given
10 low B in the diet for 7 days as described previously in the clearance study (see Section 3.4.1.).
11 On day 8 of the study all rats received a single oral dose of 30 mg/kg of boric acid at
12 approximately 9:00 a.m. This dose was the high dose used in the renal clearance study and was
13 selected as the best to examine the linearity of the boron plasma curve at the highest
14 concentration. Six 0.25 mL blood samples were drawn from each animal during a 12-hour period
15 starting at noon on day 8 of the study. The blood samples were taken at 2- to 3-hour intervals.
16 Gavage administration of 30 mg/BA/kg/day resulted in plasma levels of 1.82 ± 0.32 and
17 1.78 ± 0.32 μ /mL among pregnant and nonpregnant rats in the first blood sample taken 3 hours
18 after dosing. This was followed by a monophasic decline in plasma boron concentration in both
19 the pregnant and non-pregnant rats. The plasma concentration curves were consistent with a
20 one-compartment model. Based on the shape of the plasma concentration curve there was no
21 evidence of saturation kinetics in either the non-pregnant or pregnant rats. The estimated half-
22 life of boric acid in non-pregnant and pregnant rats were 2.9 and 3.2 hours, respectively, which
23 was not statistically different.
24

25 **3.4.3. Bone**

26
27 Elimination of boron from bone was studied in rats by Chapin et al. (1997). Bone (tibia)
28 boron levels were monitored for 32 weeks following cessation of exposure in rats that had been
29 fed boron in the diet at 4500-9000 ppm for 9 weeks. Levels of boron in the bone declined
30 slowly. After 8 weeks of recovery, bone levels of boron were reduced to roughly 10% of levels
31 at the end of exposure (e.g., at 9000 ppm: ≈ 6 μ g B/g bone from ≈ 60 μ g B/g bone) but still
32 remained 5- to 6-fold higher than bone levels in unexposed controls (≈ 1 μ g B/g bone). Even
33 after 32 weeks of recovery (and ≈ 31.5 weeks after the return of blood boron levels to normal,
34 which took only 4 days), bone boron concentrations remained 3-fold higher in treated groups
35 than bone concentrations in controls. Accumulation of boron in skeletal bones of human
36 cadavers has also been reported by Alexander et al. (1951) and Forbes et al. (1954).
37

38 **3.5. TOXICOKINETIC SUMMARY**

39
40 There is no evidence that boron is metabolized in the body. Boron is readily absorbed
41 following oral exposure both in humans and in animals. Greater than 90% of an orally
42 administered dose of boron as boric acid is excreted in a short time in both humans and in
43 animals (Jansen et al., 1984a; Schou et al., 1984; Usuda et al., 1998; Vanderpool et al., 1994). In
44 humans, boron was excreted 92-94% unchanged in the urine after 96 hours (Jansen et al., 1984a)
45 Studies in rats have shown that orally administered boron is completely absorbed in 24 hours

1 (Usuda et al., 1998). Studies in mine workers and rats have shown that boron is also absorbed
2 during inhalation exposure (Culver et al., 1994; Wilding et al., 1959). Boron is also not absorbed
3 across intact skin in humans or animals (Draize and Kelley, 1959).
4

5 Examinations in rats have revealed a fairly uniform distribution of boron outside the
6 blood compartment across various tissues (liver, kidney, muscle, large intestine, brain
7 hypothalamus, testis, epididymis, seminal vesicles, seminal vesicle fluid, adrenals and prostate).
8 Notable exceptions are that consistently lower concentrations of boron were found in fat and
9 consistently higher concentrations were observed in bone (Ku et al., 1991). Accumulation of
10 boron in fat was 20% of plasma levels after day 7 and boron in bone was increased 2- to 3-fold
11 over plasma levels after day 7. The pharmacokinetic study of boron by Usuda et al. (1998) cited
12 a high volume of distribution of 142.0 ± 30.2 mL/100 g body weight. When this finding is
13 combined with the relatively uniform distribution of boron to the tissues, the likelihood for
14 sequestration of boron by a given tissue is minimal. When these data from rodents (plasma half-
15 life, urinary elimination time course and tissue distribution) are compared with the data available
16 for humans (plasma elimination half-life reports and high volume of distribution of 104.7
17 mL/100 g body weight), it seems reasonable that the distribution of boron to human tissues
18 parallels that observed in rodents.
19

20 Because of the extent to which boron's residence time in the body and pharmacokinetic
21 profile are influenced by urinary elimination, a more thorough investigation of the urinary
22 clearance of boron was undertaken to determine the difference in the urinary clearance of boron
23 in pregnant and non-pregnant rats and humans. Reports from studies (U.S. Borax, 2000; Pahl et
24 al., 2001; Vaziriet al., 2001) indicated that the renal clearance of boron from female rats was
25 greater than in humans, and that pregnant rats and pregnant women cleared boron slightly more
26 efficiently than non-pregnant rats and women. The magnitude of the difference (rat:human)
27 between average clearance values was approximately 3.6-fold and 4.9-fold for pregnant and non-
28 pregnant individuals, respectively, in close agreement with differences in kinetic parameters
29 predicted by allometric scaling (approximately 4-fold). The variance of boron clearance in
30 humans was slightly greater than in rats (0.35%), but the coefficient of variation (s.d. ÷ mean)
31 was 4-fold higher in humans than in rats. Overall, the available pharmacokinetic data support a
32 high degree of qualitative similarity (lack of metabolism, highly cleared through renal filtration
33 mechanisms, and apparently consistent extravascular distribution characteristics) between the
34 relevant experimental species and humans.
35
36
37

4. HAZARD IDENTIFICATION

4.1. STUDIES IN HUMANS — EPIDEMIOLOGY, CASE REPORTS, CLINICAL CONTROLS

4.1.1. Oral Exposure

Sayli et al. (1998) reported on a study of the relationship between exposure to boron in the drinking water and fertility in two geographic regions of Turkey. Drinking water boron concentrations were markedly higher in one region (2.05-29 mg/L) than in the other (0.03-0.4 mg/L). The study population comprised residents (primarily males who had ever been married) from these regions who could provide reproductive histories for three generations of family members (n=159 in one region and 154 in the other, 6.7% of the population in both). There was no difference between the regions regarding percentage of married couples with live births in any generation. Secondary sex ratios appeared to differ, with an excess of female births in the high-boron region (M/F = 0.89) and a slight excess of male births in the low-boron region (M/F = 1.04), but no statistical analysis was performed and other factors reported to affect sex ratio (parental age, rate of elective abortion, multiple births) were not taken into account.

A large number of accidental poisoning cases are reported in the literature; however, quantitative estimates of absorbed dose are limited. Baker et al. (1986) reported quantitative estimates of two sibling infants who ingested formulas accidentally prepared from a boric acid eyewash solution. These infant doses ranged from 30.4-94.7 mg B/kg-day. The sibling who ingested 30.4 mg B/kg-day had a serum level of 9.79 mg B/mL and displayed a rash on his face and neck but later remained asymptomatic. The sibling who ingested 94.7 mg B/kg-day had serum boron values of 25.7 mg B/mL and experienced diarrhea, erythema of the diaper area and vomiting a small amount of formula.

Acute adult quantitative dose response data range from 1.4 mg B/kg to a high of 70 mg B/kg (Culver and Hubbard, 1996). In cases where ingestion was less than 3.68 mg B/kg, subjects were asymptomatic. Data in the 25-35 mg B/kg range were from patients undergoing boron neutron capture therapy for brain tumors. They displayed nausea and vomiting at 25 mg B/kg and at 35 mg B/kg additional symptoms included skin flush. A patient recovering from surgery had boric acid solution (70 mg B/kg) injected into the subcutaneous fluid infusion, which resulted in severe cutaneous and G.I. symptoms but recovery occurred after hydration and diuresis.

Because boron compounds were used for various medical conditions including epilepsy, malaria, urinary tract infections and exudative pleuritis from the mid 1800's until around 1900, some data are available on longer term exposure. Culver and Hubbard (1996) report on early literature cases of boron treatment for epilepsy from 2.5 to 24.8 mg B/kg-day for many years. Signs and symptoms reported in patients receiving 5 mg B/kg/day and above were indigestion, dermatitis, alopecia and anorexia. One epilepsy patient who received 5.0 mg B/kg-day for 15 days displayed indigestion, anorexia and dermatitis but the signs and symptoms disappeared when the dose was reduced to 2.5 mg B/kg-day. In a "short report" in *Archives of Disease in*

1 *Childhood*, O'Sullivan and Taylor (1983) report seizures (and other milder effects) in seven
2 infants who had consumed boron in a honey-borax mixture applied to pacifiers. Five of the
3 infants had a history suggestive of a familial reduced convulsive threshold. The seizures ceased
4 when the honey-borax treatment was stopped. The infants, who ranged in age from 6 to 16
5 weeks (at the end of the exposure period), were exposed to the honey-borax mixture over a
6 period of 4 to 10 weeks. Original estimates of exposure for this paper were based on an error in
7 the paper confirmed by the author (Taylor, 1997), concerning intake in jars versus grams of
8 boron per week. The doses were recalculated from the information given by the author based an
9 estimated daily ingestion of honey-borax mixture and the analysis of the borax content in the
10 mixture. Details of the analytic methods were not provided. Average estimated daily intakes of
11 borax ranging from 429 to 1287 mg can be calculated directly from data provided by the authors.
12 Average body weights over the exposure period for the infants in this study ranging from 4.3 to
13 5.3 kg were estimated from the Exposure Factors Handbook (U.S. EPA, 1997). Using the
14 estimated body weights and a factor of 0.113 to estimate the boron content in borax, the
15 equivalent boron exposure levels would have been about 9.6 to 33 mg/kg-day. The lowest
16 exposure level of 3.2 mg/kg-day would be considered a LOAEL for a fairly severe effect.
17 Concentrations of boron in blood of 2.6, 8.4 and 8.5 µg/mL were reported for three of the
18 subjects. Blood boron concentrations did not correlate well with estimated ingestion levels; the
19 lowest blood boron concentration was measured for the infant with the highest estimated boron
20 intake. Blood boron levels were also reported for a control group of 15 children aged 2 to 21
21 months, who had received no boron supplement and, presumably, had suffered no seizures. The
22 control group blood boron values ranged from 0 to 0.63 µg/mL and averaged 0.21 µg/mL, with a
23 standard deviation of 0.17 µg/mL. The lowest boron blood level associated with seizures of 2.6
24 µg/mL was about 4 times the highest control level and 12 times the average control level,
25 suggesting that the standard 10-fold uncertainty factor may be adequate for estimating a
26 NOAEL. However, we don't know if any infants predisposed to seizures were in the control
27 population. The presumptive boron NOAEL would be 0.32 mg/kg-day for a sensitive human
28 subpopulation. Given the relatively uncomplicated boron toxicokinetics, the lack of correlation
29 of blood boron and estimated ingestion rates suggests that the data may not be completely
30 reliable. Based on the latter consideration, the indirect exposure estimation, and the lack of
31 detail in the publication (a "short report") this study should not be considered as the critical
32 factor for derivation of the RfD, but the potential for seizures in infants should be considered in
33 establishing the RfD.

34
35 Case reports and surveys of poisoning episodes were recently reviewed by Craan et al.
36 (1997), WHO (1998a), Culver and Hubbard (1996) and Ishii et al. (1993). The most frequent
37 symptoms of boron poisoning are vomiting, abdominal pain, and diarrhea. Other common
38 symptoms include lethargy, headache, lightheadedness and rash. For boric acid, the minimum
39 lethal dose by oral exposure is approximately 15-20 g in adults, 5-6 g in children and 2-3 g in
40 infants.

41 42 **4.1.2. Inhalation Exposure**

43
44 Tarasenko et al. (1972) reported low sperm count, reduced sperm motility and elevated
45 fructose content of seminal fluid in semen analysis of 6 workers who were part of a group of 28

1 male Russian workers exposed for 10 or more years to high levels of vapors and aerosols of
2 boron salts (22-80 mg/m³) during the production of boric acid. The men in this report were
3 studied using an SRM (Sexual Function of Man) questionnaire. The results indicated that the
4 group of 28 male exposed workers had decreased sexual function compared with 10 workers
5 who had no contact with boric acid. However, the analysis of data from wives of the men from
6 the exposed and control groups showed no differences. This study is of limited value for risk
7 determinations due to the small sample size, sparse details on subjects regarding smoking habits,
8 diet, other chemical exposures, and lack of methodology information on semen analysis. In
9 response to this report and reports of reproductive effects in animal studies (see Section 4.3.2), a
10 controlled epidemiology study of reproductive effects was initiated in U.S. workers exposed to
11 sodium borates.

12
13 Whorton et al. (1994a,b, 1992) examined the reproductive effects of sodium borates on
14 male employees at a borax mining and production facility in the United States. A total of 542
15 subjects participated in the study (72% of the 753 eligible male employees) by answering a
16 questionnaire prepared by the investigators. The median exposure concentration was
17 approximately 2.23 mg/m³ sodium borate (roughly 0.31 mg B/m³). Average duration of
18 employment in participants was 15.8 years. Reproductive function was assessed in two ways.
19 First, the number of live births to the wives of workers during the period from 9 months after
20 occupational exposure began through 9 months after it ended was determined, and this number
21 was compared to a number obtained from the national fertility tables for U.S. women (an
22 unexposed control population). Wives of workers and controls were matched for maternal age,
23 parity, race and calendar year. This comparison produced the standardized birth ratio (SBR),
24 defined as the observed number of births divided by the expected number. Secondly, the
25 investigators examined possible deviations of the ratio of male to female offspring relative to the
26 U.S. ratio.

27
28 There was a significant excess in the SBR among participants as a whole (Whorton et al.,
29 1994a,b, 1992). Study participants fathered 529 births versus 466.6 expected (SBR=113,
30 p<0.01). This excess occurred even though the percentage of participants who had had
31 vasectomies (36%) was 5 times higher than the national average of 7% implicit in the expected
32 number of births. Participants were divided into 5 equal size groups (n = 108/109) based on
33 average workday exposure to sodium borates (<0.82, 0.82-1.77, 1.78-2.97, 2.98-5.04 and >5.05
34 mg/m³). There was no trend in SBR with exposure concentration; the SBR was significantly
35 elevated for both the low and high dose groups, and close to expected for the middle 3 dose
36 groups. There were 42 participants who worked high-exposure jobs for two or more consecutive
37 years. Mean sodium borate exposure in this group was 23.2 mg/m³ (17.6-44.8 mg/m³) and mean
38 duration of employment in a high-exposure job was 4.9 years (range: 2.1-20.4 years). The SBR
39 for these 42 workers was close to expected (102) despite a 48% vasectomy rate. These workers
40 also had elevated SBRs during the actual period of high exposure. An examination of SBR for
41 all participants by 5-year increments from 1950 to 1990 revealed no significant trend in either
42 direction over time.

43
44 Analyses of the percentage of female offspring showed an excess of females that
45 approached statistical significance (52.7% vs. 48.8% in controls) (Whorton et al., 1994a,b,

1 1992). This excess was not related to exposure, however, as percent female offspring decreased
2 with increasing sodium borate exposure concentration from 55.3% in the low dose group to
3 49.2% in the high dose group. Moreover, individuals with 2 or more consecutive years in high
4 borate exposure jobs had more boys than girls. The investigators concluded that exposure to
5 inorganic borates did not appear to adversely affect fertility in the population studied. This
6 study, while adequately conducted, has several inherent limitations (SBR is less sensitive than
7 direct measures of testicular effects, exposure information was limited, applicability of total U.S.
8 fertility rates as control is questionable). Thus, the human data are insufficient to determine if
9 boron may cause male reproductive toxicity (IEHR, 1997).

10
11 Whorton et al. (1992) also studied the effects of borates on reproductive function of
12 exposed female employees. Reproductive function was assessed in the same way as it was for
13 wives of male employees. A total of 81 employees were eligible, 68 of whom participated in the
14 study. No information was provided regarding matching of the exposed and control groups. The
15 SBR was 90 (32 offspring observed, 35.4 expected), indicating a deficiency, although not
16 statistically significant, in live births among exposed females. When the data were analyzed per
17 exposure category, the 76 employees (some nonparticipants apparently were included) in the low
18 and medium exposure category showed a nonstatistically significant deficit of births (37
19 compared to 43.5 expected, SBR=85). No statistical differences were observed between exposed
20 and controls when the results were analyzed by exposure categories. The authors concluded that
21 the exposure to inorganic borates did not appear to affect fertility in the population studied. It
22 must be recognized, however, that the rather small sample size may have precluded a meaningful
23 statistical analysis of the results.

24
25 Swan et al. (1995) investigated the relationship between spontaneous abortion in women
26 employed in the semiconductor manufacturing industry and various chemical and physical
27 agents used in the industry, including boron. The study population consisted of 904 current and
28 former female employees who became pregnant while working at one of 14 U.S. semiconductor
29 companies between 1986 and 1989. Approximately one-half of those included were fabrication
30 workers with some chemical exposure. Exposure classifications were based on jobs held at
31 conception and level of exposure to specific agents during the first trimester. The risk of
32 spontaneous abortion was increased in fabrication workers compared with other workers, and
33 particularly within the subgroup of workers who performed masking (a group with relatively low
34 boron exposure). No significant association was found between exposure to boron and
35 spontaneous abortion risk.

36
37 The respiratory and irritant effects of industrial exposure to boron compounds have also
38 been studied. The studies were conducted at the same borax mining and production facility as
39 the reproduction study of Whorton et al. (1994a,b, 1992). A health survey of workers at the
40 plant found complaints of dermatitis, cough, nasal irritation, nose bleeds and shortness of breath
41 (Birmingham and Key, 1963). Air concentrations of borate dust were not reported, but were
42 high enough to interfere with normal visibility. In response to this report, a cross-sectional study
43 of respiratory effects (questionnaire, spirometric testing, roentgenograms) was performed on 629
44 male workers at the plant (Ury, 1966). The study was inconclusive, but did find suggestive
45 evidence for an association between respiratory ill health and inhalation exposure to dehydrated

1 sodium borate dust based on analysis of FEV and respiratory illness data in the subgroup of 82
2 men who had worked for at least one year at the calcining and fusing processes compared with
3 the other 547 who had never worked at these processes.
4

5 Additional studies were performed by Garabrant et al. (1984, 1985). Garabrant et al.
6 (1985) studied a group of 629 workers (93% of those eligible) employed for 5 or more years at
7 the plant and employed in an area with heavy borax exposure at the time of the study. Workers
8 were categorized into four groups according to borax exposure (1.1, 4.0, 8.4 and 14.6 mg/m³
9 borax), and frequency of acute and chronic respiratory symptoms was determined. Statistically
10 significant, positive dose-related trends were found for (in order of decreasing frequency)
11 dryness of mouth, nose or throat, eye irritation, dry cough, nose bleeds, sore throat, productive
12 cough, shortness of breath and chest tightness. Frequency of these symptoms in the high dose
13 group ranged from 33% down to 5%. Pulmonary function tests and chest x-rays were not
14 affected by borax exposure. The researchers concluded that borax appears to cause simple
15 respiratory irritation that leads to chronic bronchitis with no impairment of respiratory function
16 at the exposure levels in this study. Irritation occurred primarily at concentrations of 4.4 mg/m³
17 or more. Garabrant et al. (1984) studied a subgroup of the 629 workers who were exposed to
18 boric oxide and boric acid. Workers who had held at least one job in an area with boron oxide or
19 boric acid exposure (n=113) were compared with workers who had never held a job in an area
20 with boron oxide or boric acid but had held at least one job in an area with low or minimal
21 exposure to borax (n=214). The boron oxide/boric acid workers had significantly higher rates of
22 eye irritation, dryness of mouth, nose or throat, sore throat and productive cough. Mean
23 exposure was 4.1 mg/m³, with a range of 1.2 to 8.5 mg/m³. The researchers concluded that boron
24 oxide and boric acid produce upper respiratory and eye irritation at less than 10 mg/m³.
25

26 Wegman et al. (1994) conducted a longitudinal study of respiratory function in workers
27 with chronic exposure to sodium borate dusts. Participants in the Garabrant et al. (1985) study
28 were re-tested for pulmonary function 7 years after the original survey. Of the 629 participants
29 in the original study in 1981, 371 were available for re-testing in 1988. Of these, 336 performed
30 pulmonary function tests (303 produced acceptable tests in both years). Cumulative exposure
31 was estimated for each participant for the years 1981-1988 as a time-weighted sum of the
32 exposure in each job held during that time. Exposure prior to 1981 was not included due to the
33 scarcity of monitoring data for those years. Pulmonary function tests (FEV₁, Forced Expiratory
34 Volume in 1 sec and FVC, Forced Vital Capacity) in study subjects declined over the 7-year
35 period at a rate very close to that expected based on standard population studies. Cumulative
36 borate exposure over the years 1981-1988 was not related to the change in pulmonary function.
37 Acute studies showed statistically significant, positive dose-related increases in eye, nasal and
38 throat irritation, cough and breathlessness with borate exposure (6-hr TWA or 15-min TWA).
39 The same relationships were present when effects were limited to moderate severity or higher.
40 There was no evidence for an effect of borate type (decahydrate, pentahydrate, anhydrous) on
41 response rate.
42

1 **4.2. PRECHRONIC AND CHRONIC STUDIES AND CANCER BIOASSAYS IN**
2 **ANIMALS — ORAL AND INHALATION**

3
4 **4.2.1. Oral Exposure**
5

6 In the following studies, when not reported by the investigators, approximate dosages
7 were calculated from dietary or drinking water concentrations of boron using food factors (rat:
8 0.05; dog: 0.025; mouse: 0.1) ($1 \text{ ppm} = 0.025 \text{ mg/kg-day}$ assumed dog food consumption) and
9 body-weight and water consumption values (mouse: 0.03 kg and 0.0057 L/day; rat: 0.35 kg and
10 0.049 L/day) specified by the U.S. EPA (1980, 1988). Doses in mg boric acid were converted to
11 mg boron by multiplying by the ratio of the formula weight of boron to the molecular weight of
12 boric acid ($10.81/61.84 = 0.1748$). Similarly, doses in mg borax were converted to mg boron by
13 multiplying by the ratio of the formula weight of boron to the molecular weight of borax ($4 \times$
14 $10.81/381.3 = 0.1134$).
15

16 The subchronic and chronic toxicity of borax and boric acid has been studied in dogs
17 administered these compounds in the diet (Weir and Fisher, 1972; U.S. Borax Research Corp.,
18 1963, 1966, 1967). In the subchronic study, groups of beagle dogs (5/sex/dose/compound) were
19 administered borax (sodium tetraborate decahydrate) or boric acid for 90 days at dietary levels of
20 17.5, 175 and 1750 ppm boron (male: 0.33, 3.9 and 30.4 mg B/kg-day; female: 0.24, 2.5 and
21 21.8 mg B/kg-day) and compared with an untreated control group of 5 dogs/sex (Weir and
22 Fisher, 1972; U.S. Borax Research Corp., 1963). A high-dose male dog died as a result of
23 complications of diarrhea on day 68 of the study with severe congestion of the mucosa of the
24 small and large intestines and congestion of the kidneys. No clinical signs of toxicity were
25 evident in the other dogs. The testes were the primary target of boron toxicity. At the high dose,
26 mean testes weight was decreased 44% (9.6 g) in males fed borax and 39% (10.5 g) in males fed
27 boric acid compared with controls (17.2 g). Also at this dose, mean testes:body weight ratio
28 (control: 0.2%; borax: 0.1%; boric acid: 0.12%) and mean testes:brain weight ratio (control:
29 22%; borax: 12%) were significantly reduced. Decreased testes:body weight ratio was also
30 observed in one dog from the mid-dose (175 ppm) boric acid group. Microscopic pathology
31 revealed severe testicular atrophy in all high-dose male dogs, with complete degeneration of the
32 spermatogenic epithelium in 4/5 cases. No testicular lesions were found in the lower dose
33 groups. Hematological effects were also observed in high-dose dogs. Decreases were found for
34 both hematocrit (15 and 6% for males and females, respectively) and hemoglobin (11% for both
35 males and females) at study termination in borax-treated dogs. Pathological examination
36 revealed accumulation of hemosiderin pigment in the liver, spleen and kidney, indicating
37 breakdown of red blood cells, in males and females treated with borax or boric acid. Other
38 effects in high-dose dogs were decreased thyroid:body weight ratio (control: 0.009%; borax:
39 0.006%; boric acid: 0.006%) and thyroid:brain weight ratio (control: 0.95%; borax: 0.73%) in
40 males also at the high dose were increases in brain:body weight ratio (borax) and liver:body
41 weight ratio (boric acid) in females and a somewhat increased proportion of solid epithelial nests
42 and minute follicles in the thyroid gland of borax-treated males, lymphoid infiltration and
43 atrophy of the thyroid in boric-acid treated females, and increased width of the zona reticularis
44 (borax males and females, boric acid females) and zona glomerulosa (boric acid females) in the
45 adrenal gland. This study identified a LOAEL of 1750 ppm boron (male: 30.4 mg B/kg-day;

1 female: 21.8 mg B/kg-day) and a NOAEL of 175 ppm boron (male: 3.9 mg B/kg-day; female:
2 2.5 mg B/kg-day) based on systemic toxicity in dogs following subchronic exposure.
3

4 In the chronic toxicity study, groups of beagle dogs (4/sex/dose/compound) were
5 administered borax or boric acid by dietary admix at concentrations of 0, 58, 117 and 350 ppm
6 boron (0, 1.4, 2.9 and 8.8 mg B/kg-day) for 104 weeks (Weir and Fisher, 1972; U.S. Borax
7 Research Corp., 1966). There was a 52-week interim sacrifice and a 13-week "recovery" period
8 after 104 weeks on test article for some dogs. Control animals (4 male dogs) served as controls
9 for the borax and boric acid dosed animals. One male control dog was sacrificed after 52 weeks,
10 two male control dogs were sacrificed after 104 weeks and one was sacrificed after the 13-week
11 recovery period with 104 weeks of treatment. The one male control dog sacrificed after the
12 13-week recovery period demonstrated testicular atrophy. Sperm samples used for counts and
13 motility testing were taken only on the control and high dosed male dogs prior to the 2-year
14 sacrifice. At a dose level of 8.8 mg B/kg-day in the form of boric acid, one dog sacrificed at 104
15 weeks had testicular atrophy. Two semen evaluations (taken after 24 months treatment) were
16 performed on dogs treated at the highest dose (8.8 mg B/kg-day). Two of two borax treated
17 animals had samples that were azoospermic and had no motility while one of two boric acid
18 treated animals had samples that were azoospermic. The authors reported that there did not
19 appear to be any definitive test article effect on any parameter examined. The study pathologist
20 considered the histopathological findings as being "not compound-induced." Tumors were not
21 reported.
22

23 In a follow-up to this study, groups of beagle dogs (4/sex/dose/compound) were given
24 borax or boric acid in the diet at concentrations of 0 and 1170 ppm boron (0 and 29.2 mg
25 B/kg-day) for up to 38 weeks (Weir and Fisher, 1972; U.S. Borax Research Corp., 1967). New
26 control dogs (4 males) were used for this follow up study. Two were sacrificed at 26 weeks and
27 two at 38 weeks. At the 26-week sacrifice, one of two had spermatogenesis and (5%) atrophy.
28 One was reported normal. At 38 weeks, one had decreased spermatogenesis and the other had
29 testicular atrophy. The test animals were noted throughout the study to have about an 11%
30 decrease in the rate of weight gain when compared with control animals. Interim sacrifice of two
31 animals from each group at 26 weeks revealed severe testicular atrophy and spermatogenic arrest
32 in male dogs treated with either boron compound. Testes weight, testes:body weight ratio and
33 testes:brain weight ratios were all decreased. Effects on other organs were not observed.
34 Exposure was stopped at 38 weeks; at this time, one animal from each group was sacrificed and
35 the remaining animal from each group was placed on the control diet for a 25-day recovery
36 period prior to sacrifice. After the 25-day recovery period, testes weight and testes weight:body
37 weight ratio were similar to controls in both boron-treated males, and microscopic examination
38 revealed the presence of moderately active spermatogenic epithelium in one of these dogs. The
39 researchers suggested that this finding, although based on a single animal, indicates that boron-
40 induced testicular degeneration in dogs may be reversible upon cessation of exposure. When the
41 2-year and 38-week dog studies are considered together, an overall NOAEL and LOAEL for
42 systemic toxicity can be established at 8.8 and 29.2 mg B/kg-day, respectively, based on
43 testicular atrophy and spermatogenic arrest.
44

1 These dog studies were not used to calculate the RfD due to several limitations, including
2 the small number of test animals per dose group (n=4), the use of shared control animals in the
3 borax and boric acid studies so that at most two control animals were sacrificed at any time
4 period, the observation of testicular damage in three of four control animals and the NOAEL and
5 LOAEL were taken from two different studies of different duration. Also, the study pathologist
6 considered the histopathological findings as being "not compound-induced." Based on the small
7 number of animals and the wide range of background variability among the controls, these
8 studies do not appear to be adequate for establishment of a defensible NOAEL.
9

10 Weir and Fisher (1972) also conducted studies of boron toxicity in rats. Sprague-Dawley
11 rats (10/sex/dose) were fed borax or boric acid in the diet for 90 days at levels of 0, 52.5, 175,
12 525, 1750 and 5250 ppm boron (approximately 0, 2.6, 8.8, 26.3, 87.5 and 262.5 mg B/kg-day,
13 respectively) calculated by assuming reference values of 0.35 kg bw and a food factor of 0.05 for
14 rats. Both borax and boric acid produced 100% mortality at the highest dose and complete
15 atrophy of the testes in all males fed diets containing 1750 ppm boron. Overt signs of toxicity at
16 these two dose levels included rapid respiration, eye inflammation, swelling of the paws and
17 desquamation of the skin on paws and tails. At 1750 ppm boron, both compounds produced
18 significant (p<0.05) decreases in body weight and in the mean weights of the liver, kidneys,
19 spleen and testes. At lower doses, changes in organ weights were inconsistent. At 52.5 ppm
20 boron, increases in the mean weights of the brain, spleen, kidneys and ovaries were seen in
21 females fed borax, and an increase in mean liver weight was seen in females fed boric acid; no
22 organ weight changes were seen in the males. At 175 ppm boron, the only change in organ
23 weight reported by the investigators was increased kidney weights in males fed borax. These
24 changes, however, were not observed at 525 ppm boron for either compound. Microscopic
25 examination revealed complete testicular atrophy at 1750 ppm in all males fed borax or boric
26 acid, and partial testicular atrophy at 525 ppm boron in four males fed borax and in one male fed
27 boric acid. Changes in organ weights that were reported at 52.5 ppm were not dose related and
28 were not confirmed in follow-up chronic studies by the same investigators. This study identified
29 a NOAEL of 175 ppm boron (8.8 mg B/kg-day) and a LOAEL of 525 ppm boron (26.3 mg B/kg-
30 day) boron for systemic toxicity in rats following subchronic dietary exposure.
31

32 In the chronic study, Weir and Fisher (1972) fed Sprague-Dawley rats a diet containing 0,
33 117, 350 or 1170 ppm boron as borax or boric acid for 2 years (approximately 0, 5.9, 17.5 or
34 58.5 mg B/kg-day). There were 70 rats/sex in the control groups and 35/sex in the groups fed
35 boron compounds. At 1170 ppm, rats receiving both boron compounds had decreased food
36 consumption during the first 13 weeks of study and suppressed growth throughout the study.
37 Signs of toxicity at this exposure level included swelling and desquamation of the paws, scaly
38 tails, inflammation of the eyelids and bloody discharge from the eyes. Testicular atrophy was
39 observed in all high-dose males at 6, 12 and 24 months. The seminiferous epithelium was
40 atrophied, and the tubular size in the testes was decreased. Testes weights and testes:body
41 weight ratios were significantly (p<0.05) decreased. Brain and thyroid:body weight ratios were
42 significantly (p<0.05) increased. No treatment-related effects were observed in rats receiving
43 350 or 117 ppm boron as borax or boric acid. This study identified a LOAEL of 1170 ppm (58.5
44 mg B/kg-day) and a NOAEL of 350 ppm (17.5 mg B/kg-day) for testicular effects. Based on
45 effects observed in the high-dose group, it appears that an MTD was achieved in this study. The

1 study was designed to assess systemic toxicity; only tissues from the brain, pituitary, thyroid,
2 lung, heart, liver, spleen, kidney, adrenal, pancreas, small and large intestine, urinary bladder,
3 testes, ovary, bone and bone marrow were examined histopathologically, and tumors were not
4 mentioned in the report. Nevertheless, NTP (1987) concluded that this study provided adequate
5 data on the lack of carcinogenic effects of boric acid in rats, and accordingly, conducted its
6 carcinogenicity study only in mice.

7
8 A subchronic study in rats using drinking water exposure is also available. Borax was
9 administered in the drinking water to male Long Evans rats (15/group) at levels of 0, 150 and
10 300 mg B/L for 70 days; the basal diet contained approximately 54 µg B/g of feed (Seal and
11 Weeth, 1980). The approximate intake of boron for the treated rats was 23.7 and 44.7 mg B/kg-
12 day, respectively, using reference values for body weight, food and water consumption.
13 Treatment with borax at both doses produced significant ($p < 0.05$) decreases in body weight,
14 testis, seminal vesicle, spleen and right femur weight, and plasma triglyceride levels. At the
15 highest dose level, spermatogenesis was impaired and hematocrit was decreased slightly. From
16 this study, a LOAEL of 23.7 mg B/kg-day can be identified. A NOAEL was not identified.

17
18 The subchronic and chronic toxicity of boron (boric acid) in mice was studied by NTP
19 (1987; Dieter, 1994). In the subchronic study, groups of 10 male and 10 female B6C3F1 mice
20 were fed diets containing 0, 1200, 2500, 5000, 10,000 or 20,000 ppm boric acid (0, 210, 437,
21 874, 1748 or 3496 ppm boron) for 13 weeks (NTP, 1987; Dieter, 1994). These dietary levels
22 correspond to approximately 0, 34, 70, 141, 281 and 563 mg B/kg-day for males and 0, 47, 97,
23 194, 388 and 776 mg B/kg-day for females, respectively, based on reported average values for
24 feed consumption (161 g/kg bw/day for males, 222 g/kg bw/day for females) by controls in week
25 4 of the experiment. At the highest dose level, hyperkeratosis and acanthosis of the stomach and
26 >60% mortality were observed. At 10,000 ppm boric acid, 10% mortality was observed among
27 the males. At 5000 ppm and higher, degeneration or atrophy of the seminiferous tubules was
28 observed in males, and weight gain was suppressed in animals of both sexes. Minimal to mild
29 extramedullary hematopoiesis of the spleen was observed in all dosed groups. The lowest dose
30 tested, 1200 ppm (34 mg B/kg-day for male mice), appears to be the LOAEL for this study. The
31 NOAEL (no toxicity in absence of body weight loss) was at or below 1200 ppm (34 mg/kg-day
32 for males and 47 mg/kg-day for females). From this study dietary doses of 2500 ppm (70 mg
33 B/kg-day for males and 97 mg B/kg-day for females) and 5000 ppm (141 mg B/kg-day for males
34 and 194 mg B/kg-day for females) were selected to be tested in both sexes in the chronic 2-year
35 study based on body weight depression and mortality in the two highest doses tested in the
36 subchronic study.

37
38 In the chronic study, male and female (50/sex/group) B6C3F1 mice were fed a diet
39 containing 0, 2500 or 5000 ppm boric acid for 103 weeks (NTP, 1987; Dieter, 1994). The low-
40 and high-dose diets provided approximate doses of 275 and 550 mg/kg-day (48 and 96 mg B/kg-
41 day), respectively. Mean body weights of high-dose mice were 10-17% lower than those of
42 controls after 32 (males) or 52 (females) weeks. No treatment-related clinical signs were
43 observed throughout the study. Survival of the male mice was significantly lower than that of
44 controls after week 63 in the low-dose group and after week 84 in the high-dose group. Survival
45 was not affected in females. At termination, the survival rates were 82, 60 and 44% in the

1 control, low-, and high-dose males, respectively, and 66, 66 and 74% in the control, low-, and
2 high-dose females, respectively. The low number of surviving males may have reduced the
3 sensitivity of the study for evaluation of carcinogenicity (NTP, 1987). Administration of boric
4 acid to male mice induced testicular atrophy and interstitial cell hyperplasia in the high-dose
5 group. There were also dose-related increased incidences of splenic lymphoid depletion in male
6 mice. According to NTP (1987), this lesion is associated with stress and debilitation and is
7 reflected in the increased mortality in these groups of male mice. Increased incidences of other
8 nonneoplastic lesions were not believed to have been caused by the administration of boric acid
9 because they either were not consistently dose-related or did not occur in both sexes.

10
11 There were increased incidences of hepatocellular carcinoma (5/50, 12/50, 8/49) and
12 combined adenoma or carcinoma in low dose male mice (14/50, 19/50, 15/49) (NTP, 1987;
13 Dieter, 1994). The increase was statistically significant by life table tests, but not by incidental
14 tumor tests. The incidental tumor tests were considered to be the more appropriate form of
15 statistical analysis in this case because the hepatocellular carcinomas did not appear to be the
16 cause of death for males in this study; the incidence of these tumor types in animals that died
17 prior to study completion (7/30 or 23%) was similar to the incidence at terminal sacrifice (5/20
18 or 25%) (NTP, 1987; Elwell, 1993). The hepatocellular carcinoma incidence in this study was
19 within the range of male mice historical controls both at the study lab (131/697 or 19±6%) and
20 for NTP (424/2084 or 20±7%) (NTP, 1987; Elwell, 1993). Also, the hepatocellular carcinoma
21 incidence in the male control group of this study (10%) was lower than the historical controls.
22 NTP concluded that the increase in hepatocellular tumors in low-dose male mice in this study
23 was not due to administration of boric acid.

24
25 There was also a significant increase in the incidence of combined subcutaneous tissue
26 fibromas, sarcomas, fibrosarcomas and neurofibrosarcomas in low dose male mice (2/50, 10/50,
27 2/50) by both incidental and life table pair-wise tests (NTP, 1987; Dieter, 1994). This higher
28 incidence of subcutaneous tissue tumors is within the historical range (as high as 15/50 or 30%)
29 for these tumors in control groups of group-housed male mice from other dosed feed studies
30 (Elwell, 1993). The historical incidence at the study laboratory was 39/697 (6±4%) and in NTP
31 studies was 156/2091 (7±8%) (NTP, 1987). Based on the comparison to historical controls and
32 lack of any increase in the high-dose group, NTP concluded that the increase in subcutaneous
33 tumors in low-dose male mice was not compound-related. Overall, NTP concluded that this
34 study produced no evidence of carcinogenicity of boric acid in male or female mice, although the
35 low number of surviving males may have reduced the sensitivity of the study.

36
37 Schroeder and Mitchener (1975) conducted a study in which 0 or 5 ppm of boron as
38 sodium metaborate was administered in the drinking water to groups of 54 male and 54 female
39 Charles River Swiss mice (approximately 0.95 mg B/kg/day) for their life span; controls
40 received deionized water. In adult animals there generally were no effects observed on longevity
41 body weights (at 30 days treated animals were lighter than controls and at 90 days treated males
42 were significantly heavier than controls). The life spans of the dosed group did not differ from
43 controls. Gross and histopathologic examinations were performed to detect tumors. Limited
44 tumor incidence data were reported for other metals tested in this study, but not for boron.

1 Investigators reported that at this dose, boron was not tumorigenic for mice; however, only one
2 dose of boron (lower than other studies) was tested and an MTD was not reached.
3

4 **4.2.2. Inhalation Exposure**

5

6 There are few data available regarding the toxicity of boron compounds by inhalation in
7 laboratory animals. Wilding et al. (1959) investigated the toxicity of boron oxide aerosols by
8 inhalation exposure in rats and dogs. A group of 70 albino rats, including both males and
9 females, was exposed to an average concentration of 77 mg/m³ of boron oxide aerosols (24 mg
10 B/m³) for 24 weeks (6 hours/day, 5 days/week). Additional groups of rats were exposed to 175
11 mg/m³ (54 mg B/m³) for 12 weeks (n=4) or 470 mg/m³ (146 mg B/m³) for 10 weeks (n=20) using
12 the same exposure regimen. At the latter concentration, the aerosol formed a dense cloud of fine
13 particles, and the animals were covered with dust. Also in this study, 3 dogs were exposed to 57
14 mg/m³ (18 mg B/m³) for 23 weeks. No clinical signs were noted, except a slight reddish exudate
15 from the nose of rats exposed to 470 mg/m³, which the researchers attributed to local irritation.
16 Growth was reduced roughly 9% in rats exposed to 470 mg/m³ compared to controls. Growth in
17 the lower dose groups and in dogs was not affected. There was a significant drop in pH, and
18 increase in urine volume, in rats exposed to 77 mg/m³. The researchers hypothesized that this
19 was due to formation of boric acid from boron oxide by hydration in the body and the diuretic
20 properties of boron oxide. There was also a significant increase in urinary creatinine at this
21 dose. No effect on serum chemistry, hematology, organ weights, histopathology, bone strength
22 or liver function was found in either rats or dogs (not all endpoints were studied in all exposure
23 groups).
24

25 **4.3. REPRODUCTIVE/DEVELOPMENTAL STUDIES — ORAL AND INHALATION**

26

27 **4.3.1. Developmental Studies**

28

29 Heindel et al. (1994, 1992; Price et al., 1990) treated timed-mated Sprague-Dawley rats
30 (29/group) with a diet containing 0, 0.1, 0.2 or 0.4% boric acid from gestation day (gd) 0-20.
31 The investigators estimated that the diet provided 0, 78, 163 or 330 mg boric acid/kg-day (0,
32 13.6, 28.5 or 57.7 mg B/kg-day). Additional groups of 14 rats each received boric acid at 0 or
33 0.8% in the diet (539 mg/kg-day or 94.2 mg B/kg-day) on gd 6 through 15 only. Exposure to
34 0.8% was limited to the period of major organogenesis in order to reduce the preimplantation
35 loss and early embryoletality indicated by the range-finding study, and hence provide more
36 opportunity for teratogenesis. (The range-finding study found that exposure to 0.8% on gd 0-20
37 resulted in a decreased pregnancy rate [75% as compared with 87.5% in controls] and in greatly
38 increased resorption rate per litter [76% as compared with 7% in controls]). Food and water
39 intake, and body weights, as well as clinical signs of toxicity, were monitored throughout
40 pregnancy. On day 20 of gestation, the animals were sacrificed and the liver, kidneys and intact
41 uteri were weighed, and corpora lutea were counted. Maternal kidneys, selected randomly (10
42 dams/group), were processed for microscopic evaluation. Live fetuses were dissected from the
43 uterus, weighed and examined for external, visceral and skeletal malformations. Statistical
44 significance was established at p<0.05. There was no maternal mortality during treatment. Food
45 intake increased 5-7% relative to that of controls on gestation days 12 through 20 at 0.2 and

1 0.4%; water intake was not significantly altered by administration of boric acid (data not shown).
2 At 0.8%, water and food intake decreased on days 6-9 and increased on days 15-18, relative to
3 controls. Pregnancy rates ranged between 90 and 100% for all groups of rats and appeared
4 unrelated to treatment. Maternal effects attributed to treatment included a significant and dose-
5 related increase in relative liver and kidney weights at 0.2% or more, a significant increase in
6 absolute kidney weight at 0.8%, and a significant decrease in body-weight gain during treatment
7 at 0.4% or more. Corrected body weight gain (gestational weight gain minus gravid uterine
8 weight) was unaffected except for a significant increase at 0.4%. Examination of maternal
9 kidney sections revealed minimal nephropathy in a few rats (unspecified number), but neither the
10 incidence nor the severity of the changes was dose related.

11
12 Treatment with 0.8% boric acid (gd 6-15) significantly increased prenatal mortality; this
13 was due to increases in the percentage of resorptions per litter and percentage of late fetal deaths
14 per litter. The number of live fetuses per litter was also significantly decreased at 0.8%.
15 Average fetal body weight (all fetuses or male or female fetuses) per litter was significantly
16 reduced in all treated groups versus controls in a dose-related manner. Mean fetal weights were
17 94, 87, 63 and 46% of the corresponding control means for the 0.1, 0.2, 0.4 and 0.8%,
18 respectively. The percentage of malformed fetuses per litter and the percentage of litters with at
19 least one malformed fetus were significantly increased at 0.2% or more. Treatment with 0.2% or
20 more boric acid also increased the incidence of litters with one or more fetuses with a skeletal
21 malformation. The incidence of litters with one or more pups with a visceral or gross
22 malformation was increased at 0.4 and 0.8%, respectively. The malformations consisted
23 primarily of anomalies of the eyes, the central nervous system, the cardiovascular system, and
24 the axial skeleton. In the 0.4 and 0.8% groups, the most common malformations were enlarged
25 lateral ventricles of the brain and agenesis or shortening of rib XIII. The percentage of fetuses
26 with variations per litter was reduced relative to controls in the 0.1 and 0.2% dosage groups (due
27 primarily to a reduction in the incidence of rudimentary or full ribs at lumbar I), but was
28 significantly increased in the 0.8% group. The variation with the highest incidence among
29 fetuses was wavy ribs. Based on the changes in organ weights, a maternal LOAEL of 0.2%
30 boric acid in the feed (28.5 mg B/kg-day) can be established; the maternal NOAEL is 0.1% or
31 13.6 mg B/kg-day. Based on the decrease in fetal body weight per litter, the level of 0.1% boric
32 acid in the feed (13.6 mg B/kg-day) is a LOAEL; a NOAEL was not defined.

33
34 In a follow-up study, Price et al. (1996a, 1994) administered boric acid in the diet (at 0,
35 0.025, 0.050, 0.075, 0.100 or 0.200%) to timed-mated CD rats, 60 per group, from gd 0-20.
36 Throughout gestation, rats were monitored for body weight, clinical condition and food and
37 water intake. This experiment was conducted in two phases, and in both phases offspring were
38 evaluated for post-implantation mortality, body weight and morphology (external, visceral and
39 skeletal). Phase I of this experiment was considered the teratology evaluation and was
40 terminated on gd 20 and uterine contents were evaluated. The calculated average dose of boric
41 acid consumed for Phase I dams was 19, 36, 55, 76 and 143 mg/kg-day (3.3, 6.3, 9.6, 13.3 and 25
42 mg B/kg-day). During Phase I, no maternal deaths occurred and no clinical symptoms were
43 associated with boric acid exposure. Maternal body weights did not differ among groups during
44 gestation, but statistically significant trend tests associated with decreased maternal body weight
45 (gd 19 and 20 at sacrifice) and decreased maternal body weight gain (gd 15-18 and gd 0-20)

1 were indicated. In the high-dose group, there was a 10% reduction (statistically significant in the
2 trend test $p < 0.05$) in gravid uterine weight when compared with controls. The authors indicated
3 that the decreasing trend of maternal body weight and weight gain during late gestation reflected
4 reduced gravid uterine weight. Corrected maternal weight gain (maternal gestational weight
5 gain minus gravid uterine weight) was not affected. Maternal food intake was only minimally
6 affected at the highest dose and only during the first 3 days of dosing. Water intake was higher
7 in the exposed groups after gd 15. The number of ovarian corpora lutea and uterine implantation
8 sites, and the percent preimplantation loss were not affected by boric acid exposure.
9

10 Offspring body weights were significantly decreased in the 13.3 and 25 mg B/kg-day
11 dose groups on gd 20. The body weight of the low- to high-dose groups, respectively, were 99,
12 98, 97, 94 and 88% of control weight. There was no evidence of a treatment-related increase in
13 the incidence of external or visceral malformations or variations when considered collectively or
14 individually. On gd 20, skeletal malformations or variations considered collectively showed a
15 significant increased percentage of fetuses with skeletal malformations per litter. Taken
16 individually, dose-related response increases were observed for short rib XIII, considered a
17 malformation in this study, and wavy rib or wavy rib cartilage, considered a variation. Statistical
18 analyses indicated that the incidence of short rib XIII and wavy rib were both increased in the
19 13.3 and 25 mg B/kg-day dose groups relative to controls. A significant trend test ($p < 0.05$) was
20 found for decrease in rudimentary extra rib on lumbar I, classified as a variation. Only the high-
21 dose group had a biologically relevant, but not statistically significant, decrease in this variation.
22 The LOAEL for Phase I of this study was considered to be 0.1% boric acid (13.3 mg B/kg-day),
23 based on decreased fetal body weight. The NOAEL for Phase I of this study was considered to
24 be 0.075% boric acid (9.6 mg B/kg-day).
25

26 In Phase II, dams were allowed to deliver and rear their litters until postnatal day (pnd)
27 21. The calculated average doses of boric acid consumed for Phase II dams were 19, 37, 56, 74
28 and 145 mg/kg-day (3.2, 6.5, 9.7, 12.9 and 25.3 mg B/kg-day). This phase allowed a follow-up
29 period to determine whether the incidence of skeletal defects in control and exposed pups
30 changed during the first 21 postnatal days. Among live born pups, there was a significant trend
31 test for increased number and percent of dead pups between pnd 0 and 4, but not between pnd 4
32 and 21; this appeared to be due to an increase in early postnatal mortality in the high dose, which
33 did not differ significantly from controls and was within the range of control values for other
34 studies in this laboratory. On pnd 0, the start of Phase II, there were no effects of boric acid on
35 the body weight of offspring (102, 101, 99, 101 and 100% of controls, respectively). There were
36 also no differences through termination on pnd 21; therefore, fetal body weight deficits did not
37 continue into this postnatal period (Phase II). The percentage of pups per litter with short rib
38 XIII was still elevated on pnd 21 in the 0.200% boric acid dose group (25.3 mg B/kg-day), but
39 there was no incidence of wavy rib, and none of the treated or control pups on pnd 21 had an
40 extra rib on lumbar 1. The NOAEL and LOAEL for phase II of this study were 12.9 and 25.3
41 mg B/kg-day, respectively.
42

43 Price et al. (1997) provides an analysis of maternal whole blood taken on gestation day
44 20 from the previously described study (Price et al., 1996a, 1994) where dietary concentration of
45 added boric acid yielded average daily intakes equivalent to 0, 3, 6, 10, 13, or 25 mg boron/kg

1 body weight. Blood samples were analyzed using inductively coupled plasma optical emission
2 spectrometry. Increasing dietary concentrations of boric acid were positively associated with
3 whole blood concentration in pregnant rats. Whole blood concentrations in confirmed pregnant
4 rats were 0.229 ± 0.143 , 0.564 ± 0.211 , 0.975 ± 0.261 , 1.27 ± 0.298 , 1.53 ± 0.546 , $2.82 \pm 0.987 \mu\text{g}$
5 boron/g whole blood (mean \pm SD) for the control through the high-dose groups. Positive
6 correlations between maternal blood boron concentrations and indices of maternal dietary intake
7 of boron with embryo/fetal toxicity (Price et al., 1996a, 1994) were observed at average daily
8 concentration of 13 and 25 mg B/kg. Blood boron concentrations of 1.27 ± 0.298 and 1.53 ± 0.546
9 μg boron/g were associated with the NOAEL (10 mg boron/kg/day) and the LOAEL (13 mg
10 boron/kg/day) for the developmental toxicity reported in Price et al. (1996a, 1994).

11
12 The developmental effects of boric acid also have been studied in mice and rabbits.
13 Heindel et al. (1994, 1992; Field et al., 1989) examined the developmental effects of boric acid
14 in pregnant CD-1 mice using the same experimental design as in the initial study with rats (Price
15 et al., 1990) except that a 0.8% dietary level was not used in the mouse study. The diets
16 containing 0, 0.1, 0.2 or 0.4% boric acid were estimated by the investigators to provide 0, 248,
17 452 or 1003 mg boric acid/kg-day (0, 43.4, 79.0 or 175.3 mg B/kg-day); the mice were treated
18 during gd 0-17. Neither survival rates nor pregnancy rates were affected by treatment with boric
19 acid. Pale kidneys were noted in several treated dams, particularly in the high-dose group, and
20 one dam in this group had fluid accumulation in the kidney. Maternal body weight was
21 significantly reduced by 10-15% during gd 12-17 in the high-dose group. Maternal weight gain
22 was significantly reduced during treatment in the high-dose group, but was not affected when
23 corrected for gravid uterine weight. At the 0.4% dietary level, food intake was increased
24 between days 12 and 15 and water intake was increased on days 15-17 (statistical significance
25 not provided for either effect). Organ weight changes were limited to significant increases in
26 relative kidney weight and absolute liver weight in the 0.4% groups. A dose-related increase in
27 maternal renal tubular dilation and/or regeneration was observed; the incidence was 0/10, 2/10,
28 8/10 and 10/10 in the 0, 0.1, 0.2 and 0.4% dosage groups, respectively. Treatment with boric
29 acid did not affect preimplantation loss or the number of implantation sites per litter, but
30 significantly increased the percentage of resorptions per litter and the percent of litters with one
31 or more resorptions at the 0.4% level. There was a significant dose-related decrease in average
32 fetal body weight (all fetuses or male or female fetuses) per litter at 0.2% or more. The
33 percentage of malformed fetuses per litter increased significantly at 0.4%, whereas the
34 percentage of fetuses with variations per litter was decreased at 0.1 and 0.2% and was not
35 affected at 0.4%. The most frequent malformation observed among fetuses of the 0.4% group
36 was a short rib XIII. In contrast, full or rudimentary lumbar I rib (a variation) was less frequent
37 in fetuses of treated mice. Although the level of 0.1% boric acid in the diet induced an increase
38 in renal lesions in mice, the increased incidence did not achieve statistical significance (Fisher
39 Exact Test). The 0.1% level (43.4 mg B/kg-day) is a maternal NOAEL and the 0.2% level (79
40 mg B/kg-day) is a maternal LOAEL. For developmental effects, the 0.2% dietary level of boric
41 acid is a LOAEL based on decreased fetal body weight per litter and the 0.1% level is a NOAEL.

42
43 Artificially inseminated New Zealand White rabbits (30/group) were administered 0,
44 62.5, 125 or 250 mg boric acid/kg-day (0, 10.9, 21.9 and 43.7 mg B/kg-day) in aqueous solution
45 by gavage on gd 6-19 (Price et al., 1996b, 1991; Heindel et al., 1994). Food consumption, body

1 weight and clinical signs were monitored throughout the study. At day 30, the animals were
2 sacrificed and the following endpoints were examined: pregnancy status, number of resorptions,
3 fetal body weight, viability, and external, visceral and skeletal malformations. No treatment-
4 related clinical signs of toxicity were observed during the study, except for vaginal bleeding
5 noted in 2-11 does/day on gd 19-30 at the high dose; these does had no live fetuses on day 30.
6 Vaginal bleeding was also observed in one female in the low-dose group and in one in the mid-
7 dose group. Two maternal deaths occurred (one each at the low and mid dose), but were not
8 treatment-related. Food intake was decreased relative to that of controls on treatment days 6-15
9 at the high dose, and was increased after treatment ceased on days 25-30 at the mid and high
10 doses. Body weight on gd 9-30, weight gain on gd 6-19, gravid uterine weight and number of
11 corpora lutea per dam were each decreased in the high-dose group. After correction for gravid
12 uterine weights, however, maternal body-weight gain was increased at both the mid and high
13 doses. Treatment with boric acid did not affect absolute or relative liver weight. Relative, but
14 not absolute kidney weight increased at the high dose; kidney histopathology was unremarkable.
15 Boric acid caused frank developmental effects at the high dose. These effects consisted of a high
16 rate of prenatal mortality (90% of implants/litter were reabsorbed compared with 6% in
17 controls). Also, the percentage of pregnant females with no live fetuses was greatly increased
18 (73% compared with 0% in controls), whereas the number of live fetuses per litter on day 30 was
19 significantly reduced (2.3/litter compared with 8.8/litter in controls). Malformed live fetuses per
20 litter increased significantly at the high dose, primarily due to the incidence of fetuses with
21 cardiovascular defects, the most prevalent of which was interventricular septal defect (8/14 at
22 high dose compared with 1/159 in controls). The incidence of skeletal malformations was
23 comparable among groups. Relative to controls, the percent of fetuses with variations (all types
24 combined) was not significantly increased in any treated group, but the percent with
25 cardiovascular variations was significantly increased from 11% in controls to 64% in the high
26 dose group. Fetal body weights per litter at the high dose were depressed relative to control, but
27 the difference was not statistically significant; however, this could have been due to the small
28 sample size in the high-dose group. No developmental effects were found in the low and mid
29 dose groups. In this study, the mid dose of 125 mg boric acid/kg-day (21.9 mg B/kg-day)
30 represents the NOAEL based on maternal and developmental effects. The high dose of 250 mg
31 boric acid/kg-day (43.7 mg B/kg-day) is the LOAEL.

32 33 **4.3.2. Reproductive Studies**

34 35 **4.3.2.1. *Male-Only Exposure***

36
37 Studies of subchronic and chronic toxicity of boron compounds in dogs, rats and mice
38 have identified the testes as a primary target organ in males of these species (e.g., Weir and
39 Fisher, 1972; NTP, 1987). These studies were described in Section 4.2.1. Several other studies
40 have been conducted to investigate the effects of boron compounds on male reproductive
41 performance and testicular morphology in more detail.

42
43 Dixon et al. (1976) studied the effects of borax on reproduction in male rats following
44 acute and subchronic exposure. In the acute study, groups of 10 adult male Sprague-Dawley rats
45 were given single oral doses of borax at 0, 45, 150 and 450 mg B/kg. Fertility was assessed by

1 serial mating trials in which each male was mated with a series of untreated virgin females in
2 sequential 7-day periods (for up to 70 days). The females were sacrificed 9 days after the end of
3 their breeding periods (when they would be 9-16 days pregnant), and uteri and fetuses were
4 examined. Male rats were sacrificed on days 1 and 7, and at subsequent 7-day intervals for
5 histopathological examination of the testes. No effect on male fertility was found at any dose in
6 this study. Testicular lesions were not reported. This study found a NOAEL of 450 mg B/kg for
7 reproductive effects in male rats following single-dose oral exposure.

8
9 In the subchronic study, male Sprague-Dawley rats (10/group) were given 0, 0.3, 1.0 or
10 6.0 mg B/L, as borax, in the drinking water for 30, 60 or 90 days (Dixon et al., 1976). As
11 estimated by the investigators, the highest exposure level provided 0.84 mg B/kg-day. Based on
12 this estimate, the lower two levels provided 0.042 and 0.14 mg B/kg-day. There were no
13 noticeable reproductive effects or changes in serum chemistry, plasma levels of follicle
14 stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH), or weight of the body, testes, prostate
15 or seminal vesicles. Fructose, zinc and acid phosphatase levels in the prostate were unchanged.
16 Breeding studies revealed no effects on male fertility. Therefore, the dose of 0.84 mg B/kg-day,
17 the highest dose tested, represents a NOAEL for this study.

18
19 In a follow-up study, Dixon et al. (1979); Lee et al. (1978) administered diets containing
20 0, 500, 1000 or 2000 ppm boron, as borax, to male Sprague-Dawley rats (18/group) for 30 or 60
21 days (approximately 0, 25, 50 or 100 mg B/kg-day). Significant ($p < 0.05$) decreases in the
22 weight of liver, testes and epididymis were observed at the 1000 and 2000 ppm dietary levels.
23 Seminiferous tubule diameter was significantly ($p < 0.05$) decreased in a dose-dependent manner
24 in all treatment groups; however, significant loss of germinal cell elements was observed only at
25 the 1000 and 2000 ppm dietary levels. Aplasia was complete at the highest dose. Plasma levels
26 of the hormone FSH were significantly ($p < 0.05$) elevated in a dose- and duration-related manner
27 at all dose levels, while plasma LH and testosterone levels were not affected significantly. Serial
28 mating studies revealed reduced fertility without change in copulatory behavior at the two higher
29 dose levels. Based on dose-related tubular germinal aplasia, which is reversible at low doses,
30 this study defines a LOAEL of 50 mg B/kg-day and a NOAEL of 25 mg B/kg-day.

31
32 Linder et al. (1990) examined the time- and dose-response of male rat reproductive
33 endpoints after acute administration of boric acid. In the time-response experiment, Sprague-
34 Dawley rats (6/group) were given 0 or 2000 mg boric acid/kg bw (0 or 350 mg B/kg,
35 respectively) by gavage and were sacrificed at 2, 14, 28 and 57 days after dosing. In the dose-
36 response experiment, groups of eight male rats were administered 0, 250, 500, 1000 or 2000 mg
37 boric acid/kg (0, 44, 87, 175 or 350 mg B/kg) by gavage and were killed 14 days later. In both
38 the time-response and the dose-response studies, the above doses are the total of 2 doses
39 administered at 0900 and 1600 hours on the same day. No significant clinical signs of toxicity
40 were observed during the study. Histopathologic examinations of the testes and epididymis
41 revealed adverse effects on spermiation, epididymal sperm morphology and caput sperm
42 reserves. The testicular effects, apparent at 14 days, included enlarged irregular cytoplasmic
43 lobes of Step 19 spermatids in stage VIII seminiferous tubules and retention of Step 19
44 spermatids in stage IX-XIII tubules at the 175 and 350 mg B/kg dose levels, and a substantial
45 increase ($p < 0.05$) in the testicular sperm head count per testis and per g testis in the 350 mg/kg

1 time-response group. Epididymal effects, also apparent at 14 days, included an increase in
2 abnormal caput epididymal sperm morphology (percent with head or tail defects, $p < 0.05$) and
3 reduced caput epididymal sperm reserves ($p < 0.05$). In the day 28 time-response group (350 mg
4 B/kg), significant effects ($p < 0.05$) included an increase in abnormal caput and cauda epididymal
5 sperm morphology and a decreased percentage of motile cauda spermatozoa with reduced
6 straight-line swimming velocities. Substantial recovery had occurred by day 57. This study
7 described a LOAEL for male reproductive effects of 175 mg B/kg bw and a NOAEL of 87 mg
8 B/kg bw following acute oral exposure in rats.

9
10 Treinen and Chapin (1991) examined the development and progression of reproductive
11 lesions in 36 mature male F344 rats treated with boric acid in the diet for 4-28 days. Thirty
12 animals served as controls. Boric acid was added to the feed at a level of 9000 ppm. Based on
13 food consumption and body weight data, the investigators estimated that over the 28-day period
14 the mean intake of boric acid was 348.3 mg/kg-day, or 60.9 mg B/kg-day. Sacrifices were
15 conducted at 4, 7, 10, 14, 21 and 28 days on six treated and four control animals per time point.
16 Liver, kidney and testicular histology, serum testosterone and androgen binding protein (ABP)
17 levels and tissue boron levels were assessed. In half of the treated rats there was inhibition of
18 spermiation in 10-30% of stage-IX tubules at 7 days. Inhibited spermiation was observed in all
19 stage-IX and stage-X tubules of exposed rats at 10 days. Advanced epithelial disorganization,
20 cell exfoliation, luminal occlusion and cell death were observed after 28 days, causing
21 significant loss of spermatocytes and spermatids from all tubules in exposed rats. Throughout
22 the study, specific lesions became more severe with increasing duration of exposure. Treatment
23 with boric acid had no effect on kidney and liver histology. In treated rats, basal serum
24 testosterone levels were significantly decreased ($p < 0.05$) from 4 days on, but serum testosterone
25 levels stimulated by human chorionic gonadotropin or luteinizing hormone releasing factor were
26 not affected. Steady-state levels of boron were reached in tissues by 4 days of treatment, and
27 there was no selective accumulation of boron in blood, epididymis, liver or kidney. After 4 days
28 of treatment with boric acid, serum ABP levels were significantly reduced relative to controls;
29 however, this difference disappeared by day 7.

30
31 Ku et al. (1993a) and Chapin et al. (1994) compared testis boron dosimetry to lesion
32 development. Rats were fed 0, 3000, 4500, 6000 or 9000 ppm boric acid (0, 545, 788, 1050 or
33 1575 ppm boron) for up to 9 weeks and examined. Based on food intake and body weight data,
34 the researchers estimated the daily intake of boron as < 0.2 , 26, 38, 52 or 68 mg B/kg-day. At 32
35 weeks post-treatment, recovery was assessed. Inhibited spermiation occurred at 3000 and 4500
36 ppm, and atrophy at 6000 and 9000 ppm. A mean testis boron level of 5.6 $\mu\text{g B/g}$ of tissue was
37 associated with inhibited spermiation, whereas 11.9 $\mu\text{g B/g}$ was associated with atrophy, with no
38 boron accumulation during the 9-week exposure. This suggests that separate mechanisms may
39 be operating for these effects based on testis boron concentration. Severely inhibited
40 spermiation at 4500 ppm was resolved by 16 weeks post-treatment but some areas of focal
41 atrophy did not recover post-treatment. Atrophy in the 6000 and 9000 ppm dose groups did not
42 recover post-treatment. The low dose of 26 mg B/kg-day was a LOAEL in this study.

43
44 Following *in vitro* boric acid exposure, Ku et al. (1993b) evaluated endpoints in the cell
45 culture system that suggest that boric acid has an effect on DNA synthesis that occurred at

1 concentrations associated with atrophy *in vivo*, and suggests that boric acid interferes with the
2 production and maturation of early germ cells.

3
4 Ku et al. (1994) showed that testicular atrophy and central nervous systems (CNS)
5 hormonal effects were not due to selective accumulation in testis or brain/hypothalamus with
6 boron testis concentrations of 1-2 mM. *In vitro* studies addressed boric acid testicular toxicity:
7 mild hormone effect, the initial inhibited spermiation and atrophy. No effect of boric acid on the
8 steroidogenic function of isolated Leydig cells was observed supporting the suggestion of a CNS
9 mediated hormonal effect. The authors found that inhibited spermiation was not due to increased
10 testicular cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) or reduced serine proteases plasminogen
11 activators (PA). Boric acid effects were evaluated in Sertoli-germ cell co-cultures on Sertoli cell
12 energy metabolism (lactate secreted by Sertoli cells is a preferred energy source for germ cells)
13 and DNA/RNA syntheses (germ cells synthesize DNA/RNA and boric acid impairs this nucleic
14 acid in the liver). The most sensitive *in vitro* endpoint was DNA synthesis of mitotic/meiotic
15 germ cells, with energy metabolism in germ cells affected to a lesser extent, which was
16 manifested *in vivo* as a decrease in early germ cell/Sertoli cell ratio prior to atrophy in the testes.

17
18 Naghii et al. (1996b) studied the specificity of the effect of boron on steroid hormones
19 and the impact of plasma lipids in rats. After 2 weeks on boron addition to the drinking water (2
20 mg B/rat/day) significant elevations occurred in the plasma 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D
21 concentration and a significant decrease in the plasma triacylglycerol and total HDL-cholesterol
22 concentrations compared to controls. At 4 weeks the plasma testosterone concentration was
23 significantly elevated and the HDL-cholesterol was significantly lower.

24 25 **4.3.2.2. Male and Female Exposure**

26
27 In a multigeneration study, Weir and Fisher (1972) administered 0, 117, 350 or 1170 ppm
28 boron (approximately 0, 5.9, 17.5 or 58.5 mg B/kg-day) as borax or boric acid in the diet to
29 groups of 8 male and 16 female Sprague-Dawley rats. No adverse effects on reproduction or
30 gross pathology were observed in the rats dosed with 5.9 or 17.5 mg B/kg-day, which were
31 examined to the F3 generation. Litter size, weights of progeny and appearance were normal
32 when compared with controls. The test groups receiving 58.5 mg B/kg-day boron from either
33 compound were found to be sterile. In these groups, males showed lack of spermatozoa in
34 atrophied testes, and females showed decreased ovulation in the majority of the ovaries
35 examined. An attempt to obtain litters by mating the treated females with the males fed only the
36 control diet was not successful. A LOAEL of 58.5 mg B/kg-day and a NOAEL of 17.5 mg
37 B/kg-day were identified from this study.

38
39 Fail et al. (1990, 1991) examined the effects of boric acid in Swiss CD-1 mice in a
40 reproductive study using a continuous breeding protocol. Male and female F₀ mice (11 weeks
41 old) were fed a diet containing 0, 1000, 4500 or 9000 ppm boric acid for up to 27 weeks. There
42 were 40 pairs in the control group and 20 pairs per treatment group. Based on an average food
43 consumption of 5 g/mouse and on body weights, the diet was predicted by the authors to provide
44 boric acid at 152 mg/kg-day (26.6 mg B/kg-day) to males and 182 mg/kg-day (31.8 mg B/kg-
45 day) to females in the 1000 ppm group, 636 mg/kg-day (111 mg B/kg-day) to males and 868

1 mg/kg-day (152 mg B/kg-day) to females in the 4500 ppm group and 1260 mg/kg-day (220 mg
2 B/kg-day) to males and 1470 mg/kg-day (257 mg B/kg-day) to females in the 9000 ppm group.
3 According to the authors, actual boric acid consumption during the study did not differ from the
4 predicted consumption by more than 12%. Following 1 week of treatment, the F₀ mice were
5 caged as breeding pairs for 14 weeks. During weeks 2-18, the average body-weight gain of
6 high-dose males and females was significantly reduced relative to controls. Mortality rates in
7 the treated groups over the 27 weeks were not significantly different from controls. Treatment
8 with boric acid significantly impaired fertility. None of the 9000 ppm pairs were fertile. The
9 number of litters per pair, number of live pups per litter, proportion of pups born alive, live pup
10 weight and adjusted pup weight (adjusted for litter size) were significantly (p<0.05) decreased at
11 the 4500 ppm level. The initial fertility index (percentage of cohabited pairs having at least one
12 litter) was not significantly altered in the 1000 and 4500 ppm groups, but the progressive fertility
13 index (percentage of fertile pairs that produced four litters) was decreased relative to controls in
14 the 4500 ppm group. The trend toward a lower fertility index at 4500 ppm started with the first
15 mating and progressed in severity with subsequent matings.
16

17 To determine the affected sex, the control and 4500 ppm F₀ mice were then assigned to
18 three crossover mating groups: control male x control female, 4500 ppm male x control female,
19 and control male x 4500 ppm female. Each group was composed of 19-20 pairs that were mated
20 for 7 days or until a copulatory plug was detected, whichever occurred first; control feed was
21 provided for all mice during this week, followed by a resumption of the same diets they had
22 received previously. Mating and fertility indices were significantly depressed in the 4500 ppm
23 male x control female group and only one pair in that group produced a live litter; these indices
24 were not affected in the control male x 4500 ppm female group. Dosed females mated to control
25 males had a lower body weight on pnd 0, had a longer gestational period than control groups and
26 gave birth to pups with decreased litter-adjusted weight. After completion of the crossover
27 mating trial (total of 27 weeks on test), a necropsy was performed on control and 4500 ppm F₀
28 males and females and on 1000 and 9000 ppm F₀ males, which had been maintained on their
29 respective diets to allow a comparison of semen parameters and testicular histology among all
30 four treatment groups. Males treated with 9000 ppm boric acid had significantly reduced body,
31 testis and epididymal weights. In the 4500 ppm males, body weight was not affected, but testis,
32 epididymal and prostate weights were reduced; these parameters were not altered in the 1000
33 ppm males. Significant reductions in sperm motility were observed in the 1000 and 4500 ppm
34 groups and in sperm concentration in the 4500 and 9000 ppm groups. The percentage of
35 abnormal sperm was significantly increased in the 4500 ppm group. Sperm motility and
36 morphology could not be fully evaluated in the 9000 ppm group due to absence of sperm (in 12
37 of 15 observed males) or severe reduction in sperm counts (in the other 3 males) of this group.
38 Seminiferous tubular atrophy occurred in mid- and high-dose males; the severity was dose-
39 related. Tissues of low-dose males exhibited no significant changes. Other indices of testicular
40 morphology (spermatogenic index, seminiferous tubule diameter, spermatids per testis) were
41 also altered at 4500 ppm or more. Effects observed at necropsy in 4500 ppm females (1000 and
42 9000 ppm females were not examined) were limited to a reduction in both relative and absolute
43 liver weights and absolute kidney plus adrenal weights in comparison with controls.
44

1 The final F₁ litters (exposed during gestation and lactation) from the continuous breeding
2 experiment were fed the same dosage of boric acid in the diet as their parents had received.
3 Since there were no litters at 9000 ppm and few of the mice born alive in the final litters at 4500
4 ppm survived through weaning, only the 0 and 1000 ppm F₁ mice were included in a fertility
5 trial. The F₁ mice were cohoused in nonsibling pairs (40 pairs of 0 ppm and 20 pairs of 1000
6 ppm mice) for 7 days or until a copulatory plug was observed, whichever occurred first. They
7 were maintained on their respective diets during mating and until the F₂ litters were delivered,
8 and then were necropsied. The fertility of the 1000 ppm F₁ mice was not affected, but the litter-
9 adjusted body weights of the F₂ pups (females and combined males and females) were
10 significantly decreased relative to controls. Effects in 1000 ppm F₁ females were significant
11 increases in uterine and kidney plus adrenal weights, significantly shorter estrous cycles and
12 fewer ambiguous vaginal smears. A reduction in epididymal sperm concentration in the 1000
13 ppm F₁ males approached significance (p=0.053); sperm motility and morphology were not
14 affected. Histopathologic examination was unremarkable. The lowest dose tested, 1000 ppm,
15 decreased sperm motility in the F₀ males, marginally decreased epididymal sperm concentration
16 in F₁ males, increased uterine and kidney/adrenal weights and shortened estrus cycles in F₁
17 females, and reduced litter-adjusted birth weights in the F₂ pups. Hence, the LOAEL for this
18 study is 1000 ppm boric acid (26.6 and 31.8 mg B/kg-day for males and females, respectively).
19 A NOAEL was not identified.

21 4.4. OTHER STUDIES

23 4.4.1. Genotoxicity Studies

25 Results of most short-term mutagenicity studies indicate that boron is not genotoxic. In
26 the streptomycin-dependent *Escherichia coli* Sd-4 assay, boric acid was either not mutagenic
27 (Iyer and Szybalski, 1958; Szybalski, 1958) or produced equivocal results (Demerec et al.,
28 1951). In *Salmonella typhimurium* strains TA1535, TA1537, TA98 and TA100, boric acid was
29 not mutagenic in the presence or absence of either a rat or hamster liver S-9 activating system
30 (Benson et al., 1984; Haworth et al., 1983; NTP, 1987). Boric acid (concentration, stability and
31 purity not tested by investigators) was also negative for mutagenicity in the *Salmonella*
32 microsome assay using strains TA1535, TA1537, TA1538, TA98 and TA100 in both the
33 presence and absence of rat liver metabolic activation (Stewart, 1991). Although a positive
34 result was reported both with and without metabolic activation for induction of β -galactosidase
35 synthesis (a response to DNA lesions) in *E. coli* PQ37 (SOS chromotest) (Odunola, 1997), this is
36 an isolated finding at present.

38 Results in mammalian mutagenicity test systems were all negative. Boric acid
39 (concentration, stability and purity not tested by investigators) was negative in inducing
40 unscheduled DNA synthesis in primary cultures of male F344 rat hepatocytes (Bakke, 1991).
41 Boric acid did not induce forward mutations in L5178Y mouse lymphoma cells with or without
42 S-9 (NTP, 1987). Boric acid did not induce mutations at the thymidine kinase locus in the
43 L5178Y mouse lymphoma cells in either the presence or absence of a rat liver activation system
44 (Rudd, 1991). Crude borax ore and refined borax were both negative in assays for mutagenicity
45 in V79 Chinese hamster cells, C3H/10T1/2 mouse embryo fibroblasts and diploid human

1 foreskin fibroblasts (Landolph, 1985). Similarly, boric acid did not induce chromosome
2 aberrations or increase the frequency of sister chromatid exchanges in Chinese hamster ovary
3 cells with or without rat liver metabolic activating systems (NTP, 1987).
4

5 O'Loughlin (1991) performed a micronucleus assay on Swiss-Webster mice (10
6 animals/sex/dose). Boric acid was administered in deionized water orally (no verification of
7 stability, concentration or homogeneity was made of the boric acid by the investigators) for 2
8 consecutive days at 900, 1800 or 3500 mg/kg. Five mice/sex/dose were sacrificed 24 hours after
9 the final dose and 5/sex/dose were sacrificed 48 hours after the final dose. A deionized water
10 vehicle control (10/sex) and a urethane positive control (10 males) were also tested. Boric acid
11 did not induce chromosomal or mitotic spindle abnormalities in bone marrow erythrocytes in the
12 micronucleus assay in Swiss-Webster mice.
13

14 **4.4.2. Neurological Studies**

15
16 Sodium tetraborate was administered in the drinking water to 2-month-old Wistar rats for
17 up to 14 weeks. Exposure to approximately 20.8 mg B/kg/day caused an increase in cerebral
18 succinate dehydrogenase activity after 10-14 weeks of exposure (Settimi et al., 1982). Increased
19 acid proteinase activity and increased RNA were also noted at the end of the 14-week
20 experiment.
21

22 ATSDR (1992) reported on case reports of neurological effects after accidental ingestion
23 of high levels of boron as boric acid. Doses of about 500 mg B/kg/day showed CNS
24 involvement with headaches, tremors, restlessness and convulsions followed by weakness, coma
25 and death. Histological examination revealed degenerative changes in brain neurons,
26 congestion, and edema of brain and meninges with perivascular hemorrhage and intravascular
27 thrombosis.
28

29 O'Sullivan and Taylor (1983) reported convulsions and seizures on seven infants
30 exposed to a honey-borax mixture for 4-10 weeks, where the estimated ingestion was 9.6-33 mg
31 B/kg-day. (see Section 4.1.1.).
32

33 **4.4.3. Mechanistic Studies - Testicular Effects**

34
35 The occurrence of testicular effects in the absence of overt systemic toxicity (see Section
36 4.2.1) suggests a testicular-specific mechanism of action for boron. Many studies have been
37 conducted to elucidate the mechanism by which boron produces testicular effects (see Section
38 4.3.2.1 for descriptions of some of these studies). Recent reviews of this work have been
39 published by Fail et al. (1998) and ECETOC (1994). Despite the number of studies that have
40 been done, the mechanism of boron testicular toxicity remains unknown. The available data
41 suggest an effect on the Sertoli cell, resulting in altered physiological control of sperm
42 maturation and release (Fail et al., 1998).
43

4.4.4. Mechanistic Studies - Developmental Effects

Studies regarding the mechanism of developmental toxicity produced by boron were reviewed by Fail et al. (1998). The two most sensitive effects of boron on developing rodents are decreased fetal body weight and malformations and variations of the ribs. Fail et al. (1998) concluded that reduced fetal growth probably results from a general inhibition of mitosis produced by boric acid, as documented in studies on the mammalian testis, insects, yeast, fungi, bacteria and viruses (Beyer et al., 1983; Ku et al., 1993b), while the rib malformations probably result from direct binding of boron to the bone tissue.

4.4.5. Nutrition Studies

Boron has been known since the 1920s to be an essential micronutrient for the growth of all plants. In humans boron is a trace element for which essentiality is suspected but has not been directly proven (Nielsen, 1991, 1992, 1994; NRC, 1989; Hunt, 1994; Mertz, 1993). Because deficiency in humans has not been established, there are no adequate data from which to estimate a human requirement, and no provisional allowance has been established (NRC, 1989). However, boron deprivation experiments with animals and three human clinical studies have yielded some persuasive findings for the hypothesis that boron is nutritionally essential as evidenced by the demonstration that it affects macromineral and cellular metabolism at the membrane level (Nielsen, 1994). Experimental boron nutrition research data indicate that boron can affect the metabolism or utilization of a number of substances involved in life processes including calcium, copper, magnesium, nitrogen, glucose, triglyceride, reactive oxygen, and estrogen. These effects can affect the composition of several body systems including blood, brain and skeleton (Nielsen, 1996). It is suggested that boron may prevent inflammatory disease as several key regulatory enzymes in the inflammatory response are inhibited by physiological amounts of supplemental dietary boron (Hunt, 1996). New boron nutrition research should better characterize the mechanisms through which boron modulates immune function, insulin release and vitamin D metabolism (Hunt, 1996). A close interaction between boron and calcium has been suggested. This interaction appears to affect similar systems that indirectly affect many variables including modification of hormone action and alteration of cell membrane characteristics (Nielsen et al., 1987; Nielsen, 1991, 1992, 1994; Penland, 1994). Data from three human studies of potential boron essentiality demonstrate that dietary boron can affect bone, brain and kidney variables. The subjects in most of these studies, however, were under some form of nutritional or metabolic stress affecting calcium metabolism, including reduced intake of magnesium or physiologic states associated with increased loss of calcium from bone or the body (e.g., postmenopausal women).

Based on these studies, in which most subjects who consumed 0.25 mg B/day responded to additional boron supplementation, Nielsen (1991) concluded that the basal requirement for boron is likely to be greater than 0.25 mg/day. Limited survey data indicate that the average dietary intake of boron by humans is 0.5-3.1 mg-day (7-44 $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}\text{-day}$) (Nielsen, 1991). The average U.S. adult male dietary intake of 1.52 ± 0.38 mg B/day (mean \pm standard deviation) (Iyengar et al., 1988) was determined by U.S. FDA Total Diet Study methods. In a more recent study, Anderson et al. (1994) reported an intake of 1.21 ± 0.07 mg B/day for an average diet for

1 25- to 30-year-old males, as determined by U.S. FDA Total Diet Study analyses. Similarly, the
2 average dietary boron intake in Canada is reported to be 1.33±0.13 mg B/day for women (Clarke
3 and Gibson, 1988). Dietary boron consumption in Europe can be higher than in the U.S. and
4 Canada due to wine consumption (ECETOC, 1994). These and other investigators (Nielsen,
5 1992) also recognized that greater consumption of fruits, vegetables, nuts and legumes (e.g.,
6 vegetarian diets) could raise dietary boron intake.

7 8 **4.5. SYNTHESIS AND EVALUATION OF MAJOR NONCANCER EFFECTS AND** 9 **MODE OF ACTION (IF KNOWN) — ORAL AND INHALATION**

10 11 **4.5.1. Oral Exposure**

12
13 Studies in laboratory animals conducted by oral exposure have identified the developing
14 fetus and the testes as the two most sensitive targets of boron toxicity in multiple species (Weir
15 and Fisher, 1972; Seal and Weeth, 1980; NTP, 1987; Fail et al., 1991; Price et al., 1996a,b; Field
16 et al., 1989). The testicular effects that have been reported include reduced organ weight and
17 organ:body weight ratio, atrophy, degeneration of the spermatogenic epithelium, impaired
18 spermatogenesis, reduced fertility and sterility (Weir and Fisher, 1972; Seal and Weeth, 1980;
19 NTP, 1987; Fail et al., 1991; Dixon et al., 1979; Linder et al., 1990; Treinen and Chapin, 1991;
20 Ku et al., 1993a). The mechanism for boron's effect on the testes is not known, but the
21 available data suggest an effect on the Sertoli cell, resulting in altered physiological control of
22 sperm maturation and release (Fail et al., 1998). Developmental effects have been reported in
23 mice, rabbits and rats (Heindel et al., 1992, 1994; Field et al., 1989; Price et al., 1991, 1996a,b).
24 The developmental effects that have been reported following boron exposure include high
25 prenatal mortality, reduced fetal body weight and malformations and variations of the eyes,
26 central nervous system, cardiovascular system, and axial skeleton (Price et al., 1996a,b; Field et
27 al., 1989). Increased incidences of short rib XIII (a malformation) and wavy rib (a variation),
28 and decreased incidence of rudimentary extra rib on lumbar I (a variation), were the most
29 common anomalies in both rats and mice. Cardiovascular malformations, especially
30 interventricular septal defect, and variations were the frequent anomalies in rabbits. Fail et al.
31 (1998) attributed reduced fetal growth, the most sensitive developmental endpoint, to a general
32 inhibition of mitosis by boric acid, as documented in studies on the mammalian testis, insects,
33 yeast, fungi, bacteria and viruses (Beyer et al., 1983; Ku et al., 1993b).

34 35 **4.5.2. Inhalation Exposure**

36
37 Studies in humans and animals have shown that borates are absorbed following
38 inhalation exposure (Culver et al., 1994; Wilding et al., 1959). It is not clear what percentage of
39 the absorbed material in these studies was absorbed via the respiratory tract directly; transport of
40 deposited material from the upper respiratory tract to the gastrointestinal tract may have played
41 an important role (Culver et al., 1994). However, because borates in the body all exist as boric
42 acid, are distributed evenly throughout the soft tissues in the body water and are not metabolized
43 (Ku et al., 1991; Naghii and Samman, 1996b; WHO, 1998a), there is no reason to expect route-
44 specific differences in systemic targets. Therefore, systemic target tissues identified in oral
45 studies comprise the potential systemic targets following inhalation exposure. There may,

1 however, be route-specific differences in ability to deliver toxic doses to the targets, so that for
2 example, very high exposure concentrations may be required to produce effects by inhalation
3 exposure. Portal-of-entry effects may also differ with exposure route.
4

5 The literature regarding the toxicity of boron by inhalation exposure is sparse. There is a
6 report from the Russian literature of reduced sperm analysis of 6 workers who were part of a
7 group of 28 male workers exposed to high concentrations of boron (boric acid) aerosols (22-80
8 mg/m³) for over 10 years (Tarasenko et al., 1972). These effects are consistent with the
9 testicular effects reported in oral studies, but have not been confirmed by other inhalation
10 studies. However, data from Tarasenko et al. (1972) is of limited value for risk determination
11 due to sparse details and small sample size. No effect on fertility was found in a far larger study
12 of U.S. borate production workers (Whorton et al., 1992, 1994a,b), but exposure concentrations
13 were much lower (\approx 2.23 mg/m³ sodium borate or 0.31 mg B/m³) in this study. No target organ
14 effects were found in the lone animal study, in which rats were exposed to 77 mg/m³ of boron
15 oxide aerosols (24 mg B/m³) for 24 weeks, but testicular effects were examined only by limited
16 histopathology (Wilding et al., 1959). This study also included a high dose group exposed to
17 470 mg/m³ boron oxide (146 mg B/m³) for 10 weeks, a concentration at which the aerosol
18 formed a dense cloud of fine particles and the animals were covered with dust. Systemic
19 endpoints were not examined, but growth was reduced and there was evidence of nasal irritation.
20 Acute irritant effects are well documented in human workers exposed to borates, primarily at
21 concentrations greater than 4.4 mg/m³ (Wegman et al., 1994; Garabrant et al., 1984, 1985).
22 However, there is no evidence for reduced pulmonary function in workers with chronic exposure
23 (Wegman et al., 1994). These data are inadequate to support derivation of an RfC for boron
24 compounds.
25

26 **4.6. WEIGHT-OF-EVIDENCE EVALUATION AND CANCER** 27 **CHARACTERIZATION — SYNTHESIS OF HUMAN, ANIMAL, AND OTHER** 28 **SUPPORTING EVIDENCE, CONCLUSIONS ABOUT HUMAN** 29 **CARCINOGENICITY, AND LIKELY MODE OF ACTION** 30

31 No data were located regarding the existence of an association between cancer and boron
32 exposure in humans. Studies available in animals were inadequate to ascertain whether boron
33 causes cancer. The chronic rat feeding study conducted by Weir and Fisher (1972) was not
34 designed as a cancer bioassay. Only a limited number of tissues were examined
35 histopathologically, and the report failed to mention any tumor findings. The chronic mouse
36 study conducted by NTP (1987) was adequately designed, but the results are difficult to
37 interpret. There was an increase in hepatocellular carcinomas in low-dose, but not high-dose,
38 male mice that was within the range of historical controls. The increase was statistically
39 significant using the life table test, but not the incidental tumor test. The latter test is more
40 appropriate when the tumor in question is not the cause of death, as appeared to be the case for
41 this study. There was also a significant increase in the incidence of subcutaneous tumors in low-
42 dose male mice. However, once again the increase was within the range of historical controls
43 and was not seen in the high-dose group. Low survival in both the low- and high-dose male
44 groups (60 and 40%, respectively) may have reduced the sensitivity of this study for evaluation
45 of carcinogenicity. The chronic mouse study conducted by Schroeder and Mitchener (1975) was

1 inadequate to detect carcinogenicity because only one, very low dose level was used (0.95 mg
2 B/kg/day) and the MTD was not reached. No inhalation cancer data were located. Studies of
3 boron compounds for genotoxicity were overwhelmingly negative, including studies in bacteria,
4 mammalian cells and mice *in vivo*.

5
6 Under EPA's current guidelines for carcinogen risk assessment (U.S. EPA, 1986a), boron
7 is classified as Group D; not classifiable as to human carcinogenicity. Under the new proposed
8 guidelines (U.S. EPA, 1996a), the data are considered to be inadequate for evaluation of the
9 human carcinogenic potential of boron.

10 11 **4.7. SUSCEPTIBLE POPULATIONS**

12 13 **4.7.1. Possible Childhood Susceptibility**

14
15 The developing fetus is the most sensitive target of boron toxicity that has been
16 identified. An oral dose of 13.3 mg B/kg-day on days 0-20 of gestation produced decreased fetal
17 body weight in rats (Price et al., 1996a). The NOAEL was 9.6 mg B/kg-day. Maternal effects
18 were not seen in the same study, even at doses of 25 mg B/kg-day. Fetal body weight deficits
19 did not continue into the postnatal period, suggesting that the effect is specific to the fetal period.
20 Based on data from poisoning case reports, the lethal oral dose of boric acid in infants (2-3 g)
21 and children (5-6 g) is similar to that in adults (15-20 g) on a mg/kg basis (≈ 200 mg/kg). Based
22 on acute human data, infant doses of 30.4-94 mg B/kg were at the upper end of the adult dose
23 response curve of 35-90 mg B/kg. Acute infant and adult human response to boron is similar
24 quantitatively and qualitatively (Culver and Hubbard, 1996) (see Section 4.1.1.). No additional
25 information was available to assess childhood susceptibility.

26 27 **4.7.2. Possible Gender Differences**

28
29 The two most sensitive targets of boron that have been identified are the developing fetus
30 (rats, mice and rabbits) carried by the pregnant female, and the testes of the male. The
31 developing fetus (LOAEL = 13.3 mg B/kg-day, NOAEL = 9.6 mg B/kg-day) appears to be
32 slightly more sensitive than the male testis (LOAEL = 29 mg B/kg-day, NOAEL = 8.8 mg B/kg-
33 day) (Price et al., 1996a; Weir and Fisher, 1972).

34
35 Effects on the pregnant females themselves are seen only at considerably higher doses
36 (no clearly adverse maternal effects even at 94.2 mg B/kg-day in the same study used to derive
37 the NOAEL and LOAEL values for the developing fetus reported above). A specific target of
38 boron toxicity has not been identified in non-pregnant females, who are markedly less
39 susceptible to boron than males. Data are inadequate to assess differences in gender
40 susceptibility with regard to non-reproductive, non-developmental effects.

5. DOSE-RESPONSE ASSESSMENTS

5.1. ORAL REFERENCE DOSE (RfD)

5.1.1. Choice of Principal Study and Critical Effect — with Rationale and Justification

Developmental effects (decreased fetal weights) are considered the critical effect.

The studies by Price et al. (1990, 1994, 1996a) and Heindel et al. (1992) in rats were chosen as critical developmental studies because they were well conducted studies of a sensitive endpoint that identified both a NOAEL and LOAEL. Rats were more sensitive than mice and rabbits, which were also studied for developmental toxicity (Price et al., 1996b; Heindel et al., 1994). The dog study by Weir and Fisher (1972) identified a NOAEL and LOAEL for testicular effects. Testicular effects were found at higher doses in rats and mice in this and other studies (Weir and Fisher, 1972; Seal and Weeth, 1980; NTP, 1987; Fail et al., 1991; Dixon et al., 1979; Linder et al., 1990; Treinen and Chapin, 1991; Ku et al., 1993a).

The Institute for Evaluating Health Risks concluded that there was a consistent correlation between boric acid exposure and the different effects on rib and vertebral development in rats, mice and rabbits (IEHR, 1997). Of these three species, the rat was the most sensitive to low-dose effects. There was a causal association between exposure to boric acid and the short rib XIII when fetuses were examined at late gestation or when pups were examined at pnd 21. The IEHR (1997) concluded that decreased fetal body weight occurred at the same dose or at doses lower than those at which skeletal changes were observed, and agreed that this was the preferred data set for deriving quantitative estimates.

5.1.2. Methods of Analysis — Including Models (PBPK, BMD, etc.)

The RfD was derived by the benchmark dose (BMD) approach. Several BMD analyses were conducted by Allen et al. (1996) using all relevant endpoints in the Heindel et al. (1992) and Price et al. (1994, 1996a) studies. The earlier study by Heindel et al. (1992) did not define a NOAEL while the later study by Price et al. (1996a) was designed as a follow up study to the Heindel study to examine fetal body weight at lower doses to define a NOAEL. The results of the Allen et al. (1996) benchmark dose analysis for decreased fetal body weight for the Price study alone gave a BMDL of 47 mg BA/kg-day (8.2 mg B/kg/day) and for the Heindel study alone, the BMDL reported by Allen et al. (1996) was 56 mg BA/kg/day (9.8 mg B/kg/day). The combined data from Heindel et al. (1992) and Price et al. (1994, 1996a) gave a BMDL of 59 mg BA/kg/day (10.3 mg B/kg/day). Changes in fetal weight were analyzed by taking the average fetal weight for each litter with live fetuses. Those averages were considered to represent variations in a continuous variable and a continuous power model was used. A BMDL was defined in terms of a prespecified level of response, referred to as the benchmark response (BMR) level (Kavlock et al., 1995). For mean fetal weight analysis, the BMDL was defined as the 95% lower bound on dose corresponding to a 5% decrease in the mean (BMR was 5% decrease). For the continuous power model, F-tests that compared the lack of model fit to an estimate of pure error were employed.

1 For all endpoints, the results of the two studies were compared. The dose-response
2 patterns were examined to determine if a single function could adequately describe the responses
3 in both studies. This determination was based on a likelihood ratio test. The maximum log-
4 likelihoods from the models fit to the two studies considered separately were added together; the
5 maximum log-likelihood for the model fit to the combined results was then subtracted from this
6 sum. Twice that difference is distributed approximately as a chi-square random variable (Cox
7 and Lindley, 1974). The degrees of freedom for that chi-square random variable are equal to the
8 number of parameters in the model plus 1. The additional degree of freedom was available
9 because the two control groups were treated as one group in the combined results, which
10 eliminates the need to estimate one of the intra-litter correlation coefficients (for beta-binomial
11 random variables) or variances (for normal random variables) that was estimated when the
12 studies were treated separately. The critical values from the appropriate chi-square distributions
13 (associated with a p-value of 0.01) were compared to the calculated values. When the calculated
14 value was less than the corresponding critical value, the combined results were used to estimate
15 BMDLs; this result indicated that the responses from the two studies were consistent with a
16 single dose-response function. BMDL values calculated with a continuous power model for fetal
17 body weight (litter weight averages) were less than those for all other relevant endpoints. The
18 BMDL based on the combined results of the two studies was 10.3 mg B/kg-day, which was very
19 close to the NOAEL of 9.6 mg B/kg-day from the Price et al. (1994, 1996a) study. The BMDL
20 of 10.3 mg B/kg-day from the combined studies was chosen to derive the RfD because they were
21 similarly designed studies conducted in the same laboratory and all the dose response data could
22 be used in the BMDL estimation, thereby increasing the confidence that the dose response
23 pattern has been estimated satisfactorily.

24 **5.1.3. Derivation of the RfD**

25
26
27 Uncertainty factors (UFs) are applied in the RfD methodology to account for recognized
28 uncertainties in extrapolation from experimental conditions to lifetime exposure for humans.
29 These UFs cover broad areas of uncertainty, such as “animal-to-human” (interspecies; UF_A) and
30 “sensitive human” (interindividual; UF_H) extrapolations. Both UF_A and UF_H , however, can be
31 thought of as a combination of two subfactors, one each for toxicokinetics (TK) and
32 toxicodynamics (TD).¹ The TK/TD “paradigm” formally allows for the quantitative
33 incorporation of additional data previously used in only a qualitative fashion. The concept has
34 been previously introduced into U.S. EPA methodology in the Reference Concentration
35 methodology (U.S. EPA, 1994b), where the kinetic component deals primarily with airway
36 anatomy and physiology, but does not address systemic kinetics and dynamics. Otherwise, the
37 U.S. EPA has not established guidance in this area. The International Programme on Chemical
38 Safety (IPCS) has developed a document providing guidance in the selection of chemical-
39 specific adjustment factors (CSAF), which does cover systemic kinetics and dynamics (IPCS,
40 2001) (see Section 5.1.3.8.). This document (IPCS, 2001) is still considered as a draft and has
41 not been formally reviewed by the U.S. EPA. In general, the toxicokinetic factor development in
42 the boron RfD derivation is consistent with IPCS (2001). Additionally, IPCS had previously

¹ equivalent to *pharmacokinetics* and *pharmacodynamics* in the medical literature.

1 applied the TK/TD subfactor approach in their assessment of boron (WHO, 1998a). The TK and
2 TD factors described here are derived from data and represent variability between species and
3 within humans. As such, they are no longer *uncertainty* factors and are more correctly termed
4 *variability* factors. The latter designation shall be adopted in this document.
5

6 In the most simple terms, toxicokinetics deals with what the body does to the chemical,
7 while toxicodynamics deals with what the chemical does to the body. In essence, the
8 toxicokinetic factor addresses internal exposure, in that the objective is to determine the dose of
9 the ultimate toxic form of the compound at the target tissue. The toxicodynamic factor then
10 deals with the response of the target tissue given a specific dose. A “pure” toxicodynamic factor
11 must be independent of the toxicokinetics. As it is unlikely that *in vivo* responses will be free of
12 kinetic variability, toxicodynamic data will be obtained largely from *in vitro* (cellular level)
13 studies. In these cases, a connection to systemic dynamics must be established, as well. Given
14 enough data, the form of a TK/TD model could be a sophisticated multi-compartment, highly
15 non-linear, biologically-based toxicokinetic model linked to a mathematical dose-response
16 model relating molecular/cellular response to whole-organism response. Most of the time,
17 however, extrapolations are based upon a simple multiplicative combination of two uncertainty
18 factors, one for TK and one for TD. Even more often, data will only be available for
19 determination of the TK factor, requiring the use of a default value for TD. Lacking a
20 sophisticated model, the usual approach will be to find one or more kinetic variables (relating to
21 internal dose) for which an animal-to-human ratio can be estimated, using that ratio to scale the
22 human exposure (external dose) relative to the test animal. Whenever the kinetic factors are
23 used in this manner, additional factors must be considered in order to relate the internal kinetics
24 back to the external dose. Simple absorption and distribution constants should usually suffice.
25

26 **5.1.3.1. TK/TD Subfactor Default Values (Uncertainty)** 27

28 The WHO (1994) and IPCS (2001) have maintained a default value of 10 for both the
29 UF_A (interspecies uncertainty) and UF_H (intraspecies uncertainty). Based upon limited data
30 describing toxicodynamic or toxicokinetic differences, the UF_A of 10 is apportioned between TD
31 and TK components so that the default value for the TD component is 2.5 ($10^{0.4}$) and the default
32 value for the TK component is 4.0 ($10^{0.6}$). Similarly, WHO (1994) and IPCS (2001) divided UF_H
33 into TD and TK components with assigned default values of 3.16 ($10^{0.5}$) each. The U.S. EPA has
34 assumed an equal contribution ($10^{0.5}$ each) of TK and TD for both UF_A and UF_H for at least two
35 RfCs, but has not explicitly addressed the issue for RfDs (U.S. EPA, 2001). As standard
36 notation in this document, the factors addressing uncertainty (as opposed to variability)
37 henceforth will be designated as UF_{AK} , UF_{AD} , UF_{HK} , and UF_{HD} , respectively.
38

39 The default half-order of magnitude toxicokinetic/toxicodynamic uncertainty factor
40 partition is essentially an ignorance-based one, in that if we don't have any evidence to the
41 contrary, we assume equal contribution from each source of uncertainty. The kinetic and
42 dynamic default values for UF_A are given unequal values for the boron assessment, as there is
43 empirical and conceptual support for an uneven default partition. For the class of compounds,
44 such as boron, for which a physiological rate is justified as the sole toxicokinetic scaling
45 variable, the IPCS (1998, 2001) approach is adopted, where UF_{AK} and UF_{AD} are assigned default

1 values of 4.0 and 2.5, respectively. This partition is based primarily on an empirical analysis
2 published by Renwick (1993), in which various kinetic and dynamic factors for test animals and
3 humans were compared. The toxicokinetic factors were blood flows (renal and hepatic, liver
4 weight, and plasma kinetics (absorption and 1st pass metabolism), which were compared for
5 several species (mouse, rat, rabbit, dog, and monkey) with human values. The toxicodynamic
6 endpoints were various physiologic (primarily hematological) responses, either constitutive or
7 chemically-stimulated, compared between rodents and humans. Renwick (1993) reported
8 average animal-to-human ratios of 2.1 (range 0.8-4.5) for toxicokinetic differences related to
9 physiological processes (liver weight, liver plasma flow, and renal plasma flow) and average
10 animal-to-human ratios of 1.2 (range 0.04-3.3) for the toxicodynamic responses. Partitioning the
11 relative difference within the 10-fold overall interspecies UF default value yields values of 4.2
12 and 2.4 for the kinetic and dynamic factors, respectively. Since there was an excessive implied
13 precision in these particular values, they were simplified to 4.0 and 2.5, respectively, by
14 Renwick (1993).
15

16 For boron and kinetically-similar compounds, renal clearance is, perhaps, a much more
17 relevant and specific choice than the other toxicokinetic variables studied by Renwick (1993).
18 Boron is not metabolized in rats or humans and is similar in absorption and distribution between
19 these two species. Approximately 98% of administered boron has been shown to be eliminated
20 in the urine in rats and humans. Differences in elimination rate between rats and humans for
21 boron are primarily in the clearance rate. A fairly large body of evidence suggests that many of
22 the factors that determine kinetics generally scale to $BW^{0.75}$ across species. That is, the
23 variability in the absolute value for these factors across species is largely accounted for by
24 dividing the absolute (uncorrected) value by the species average body weight raised to the $\frac{3}{4}$
25 power. In particular, renal clearance values scale across species with an exponent ranging from
26 0.69-0.89 (summarized in Davidson et al., 1986). Based on an allometric exponent of 0.75 and
27 the reference body weights of 70 kg for humans and 0.35 kg for rats, the rat:human allometric
28 scaling factor would be 3.8, but could vary between 1.8 and 5.2, given the range of the data.
29 There is additional uncertainty, however, as a strictly allometric approach does not take into
30 account absorption and distribution differences between rats and humans. Therefore, the
31 allometric argument supports a value near 4.0 as the average, or *expected*, factor for scaling
32 test-animal kinetics to human kinetics.
33

34 The fundamental concept of an uncertainty factor, however, requires that it be a
35 conservative (in the sense of human health protection) estimate of a particular “dose-scaling”
36 factor likely to occur as a result of acquiring missing information (Dourson and Stara, 1983;
37 Barnes and Dourson, 1988; Dourson, 1994; Baird et al., 1996; Swartout et al., 1998; U.S. EPA,
38 2001). The same concept must hold for sub-factors, such as the toxicokinetic and toxicodynamic
39 factors, resulting from a disaggregation of individual uncertainty factors. Each of the sub-factors
40 is, conceptually, still an uncertainty factor. Therefore, the default value for the sub-factor must
41 represent a “conservative” estimate of the expected value. In the probabilistic sense, for any
42 uncertainty factor (e.g., UF_{KA}), the default value should be an upper percentile of the underlying
43 scaling (or variability) factor distribution (Swartout et al., 1998). Adopting a default value of
44 $10^{0.5}$ for the toxicokinetic factor is clearly not conservative for rodent species. Taking the rat as
45 the typical species on which RfDs are based, with the allometric expectation of a 3.8-fold scaling

1 factor, a default of 4 would be the lowest value that could be adopted that is consistent with the
2 nature of an uncertainty factor. A higher value would be more consistent but would result in a
3 less conservative toxicodynamic default, for which we do not have adequate data to establish.

5 5.1.3.2. Revised RfD Calculation Formula

6
7 The formula for calculating the RfD with this uncertainty factor disaggregation is given
8 in Equation 5.1.

$$9 \quad RfD = \frac{D_C}{(VF_{AK} \cdot VF_{AD} \cdot VF_{HK} \cdot VF_{HD} \cdot UF_{AK} \cdot UF_{AD} \cdot UF_{HK} \cdot UF_{HD} \cdot UF_X \cdot MF)} \quad (5.1)$$

10
11
12
13 where:

- 14 D_C is the “critical” dose (NOAEL, LOAEL, BMD) defined in the critical study,
15 VF_{AK} is the interspecies toxicokinetic variability factor (derived from data; default = 1),
16 VF_{AD} is the interspecies toxicodynamic variability factor (derived from data; default =
17 1),
18 VF_{HK} is the interindividual toxicokinetic variability factor (derived from data; default =
19 1),
20 VF_{HD} is the interindividual toxicodynamic variability factor (derived from data; default
21 = 1),
22 UF_{AK} is the interspecies toxicokinetic uncertainty factor (default = 4.0),
23 UF_{AD} is the interspecies toxicodynamic uncertainty factor (default = 2.5),
24 UF_{HK} is the interindividual toxicokinetic uncertainty factor (default = $10^{0.5}$),
25 UF_{HD} is the interindividual toxicodynamic uncertainty factor (default = $10^{0.5}$),
26 UF_X represents all other uncertainty factors ($UF_L \times UF_D \times UF_S = 1$, for boron),
27 MF is the Modifying Factor (= 1 for boron).

28
29 Note that if data are inadequate for estimation of a specific variability factor, it takes on the value
30 of 1 by convention, which then requires application of a default value for its corresponding
31 uncertainty factor. The variability factors are given separate representation from their
32 corresponding uncertainty factors to emphasize that they no longer represent uncertainty. If the
33 data are judged to be sufficient in themselves, their respective uncertainty factor counterparts
34 will be reduced to unity. If there are significant issues concerning the data or the modeling of
35 the data, residual uncertainty may result in values greater than 1.0 for the corresponding
36 uncertainty factor. Relating this formula (Eq. 5.1) to the standard RfD formula, note that the
37 product of VF_{AK} , UF_{AK} , VF_{AD} , UF_{AD} , VF_{HK} , UF_{HK} , VF_{HD} , UF_{HD} , and UF_X corresponds to the total
38 UF as shown in the IRIS RfD Summary Table. For convenience and sake of reference, this
39 product is given the term “Total Adjustment Factor” and is designated as AF_{TOT} .

40 5.1.3.3. Toxicokinetic Modeling Issues for Boron

41
42
43 While no data presently exist to address the *toxicodynamic* component of UF_A or UF_H ,
44 existing data are adequate to establish values for VF_{AK} and VF_{HK} and reduce uncertainty in the
45 *toxicokinetic* components of both uncertainty factors. The most relevant internal dose metric for

1 boron toxicity, which is most likely a result of continuous exposure over an extended period, is
2 the average fetal concentration for the entire gestational period. As there are no direct
3 measurements of fetal boron concentrations, an assumption is made that fetal boron
4 concentration is directly proportional to boron concentration in maternal plasma. There are
5 insufficient data to compare plasma boron in rats and humans at the same exposure levels.
6 Therefore boron clearance, which is only partially dose-dependent, is used as an estimator of
7 internal dose. Clearance, expressed in units of ml/min is inversely related to plasma
8 concentration, in that clearance is calculated by dividing the total mass of substance eliminated
9 in the urine in a specific time (i.e., mg/min) by the concentration of the substance in the plasma
10 (mg/ml). Therefore, the higher the clearance value, the lower the plasma concentration. Other
11 processes, such as fecal elimination, metabolism, and sequestration also reduce the plasma
12 concentration. However, as boron is almost not metabolized and is entirely eliminated in the
13 urine, clearance of boron by the kidney can be used as the key toxicokinetic factor.
14

15 Although the toxic effects of boron are manifested in the offspring, the pregnant females
16 (for both humans and test animals) are considered to be the “sensitive subpopulation,” with
17 respect to establishing an equivalent toxic dose across species. For the RfD, toxicity benchmarks
18 are expressed in terms of external (maternal) exposure, rather than internal (fetal) dose. In this
19 sense, pregnant females are treated as a surrogate for the true sensitive subpopulation — the
20 fetuses. A compartmentalized toxicokinetic model, with the fetus as one of the compartments,
21 would be needed to directly assess the dose to the fetus. Given the near first order kinetics of
22 boron, maternal toxicokinetic variability is likely to be an adequate surrogate for the fetal dose
23 variability, although there is some remaining uncertainty in fetal kinetic variability.
24

25 **5.1.3.4. Interspecies Uncertainty (UF_A)**

26
27 As the rat:human boron clearance ratio is being used essentially as an (inverse) estimator
28 of relative internal dose and subsequently as a scalar of “external dose” (ingested dose rate in
29 mg/kg-day), an additional factor must be considered that ties internal dose to external dose.
30 Assuming a relatively constant intake of boron and that the toxic outcome is most likely related
31 to a continuous exposure over an extended critical period (the period of organogenesis during
32 fetal development), the most appropriate estimator for internal dose is the average (steady-state)
33 circulating boron concentration.
34

35 The steady-state plasma concentration (mass/volume) of boron given a constant rate of
36 intravenous infusion is:

$$37 \quad C_{ss} = k_0 / Cl \quad (5.2)$$

38 where:

39 k_0 is the constant infusion rate (mass/time) and
40 Cl is the clearance rate (volume/time).
41

42 The daily ingested dose (mg/kg-day) replaces the intravenous infusion rate by including three
43 additional factors — an absorption (from the gut) constant, the absorbed fraction distributed to
44 the plasma compartment, and body mass as in Equation 5.3.

$$k_0 = D_e f_a f_p M_b \quad (5.3)$$

where:

D_e is the external ingested dose rate in mg (boron) per kg body mass per day,
 f_a is the gut absorption constant (fraction of ingested boron absorbed from the gut),
 f_p is the absorbed fraction (of boron) distributed to the plasma compartment, and
 M_b is body mass (kg).

The product of the factors f_a and f_p is the same as the bioavailability factor in a similar equation for steady-state plasma concentrations (Renwick, 1991).

Substituting for k_0 in Equation 1 and solving for D_e , Equation 5.4 is obtained.

$$D_e = \frac{C_{SS} Cl}{f_a f_p M_b} \quad (5.4)$$

The interspecies variability factor, VF_{AK} , is used to scale the human ingestion dose rate to the test animal dose rate. Therefore, in this case, VF_{AK} is equal to the ratio of D_e -rat to D_e -human. Taking the ratio of rat and human external dose rate yields Equation 5.5, where the trailing subscript designates the species r = rat, h = human).

$$VF_{AK} = \frac{D_{er}}{D_{eh}} = \frac{C_{SSr} \times Cl_r \times f_{ah} \times f_{ph} \times M_{bh}}{C_{SSh} \times Cl_h \times f_{ar} \times f_{pr} \times M_{br}} \quad (5.5)$$

For the boron interspecies kinetic adjustment factor (VF_{AK}), the rat:human boron clearance ratio is applied as a scalar to a specific rat external dose (the BMD of 10.3) in order to obtain an equivalent human dose at a fixed target tissue dose. As C_{SS} is used as the estimator for target tissue dose, the latter condition (fixed target tissue dose) is satisfied by setting the rat:human C_{SS} ratio to 1. In addition, the boron clearance values presented in this document are expressed relative to body mass (i.e., ml/min-kg), so the M_b terms can be eliminated, yielding Equation 5.6.

$$VF_{AK} = \frac{Cl_r \times f_{ah} \times f_{ph}}{Cl_h \times f_{ar} \times f_{pr}} \quad (5.6)$$

where Cl_r and Cl_h are now expressed in units of ml/min-kg. The mean boron clearance (in ml/min-kg) for pregnant rats and pregnant women is 3.3 and 1.02, respectively, determined from the kinetic studies of U.S. Borax (2000), Vaziri et al. (2001) and Pahl et al. (2001). Although there is a presumed dose-dependence of boron clearance over extended exposure ranges arising from boron reabsorption (see discussion in following section), the average fractional clearance for both rats and humans in these studies was similar (rats receiving much higher exposure). Similar fractional clearance indicates a similar rate of reabsorption in the kidney tubules, allowing for greater confidence in applicability of the direct comparison.

1 Although there are no data specifically for pregnant individuals, boron is about 95%
2 absorbed from the G.I. tract by adult rats and over 90% by adult humans. As there is no other
3 reason to believe that absorption in the gut should be different in humans and rats, f_{ah} and f_{ar} are
4 both set to 0.95. As boron is not sequestered to any significant extent in specific tissues
5 (although, to a small degree in bone) and that there are no apparent active transport mechanisms
6 for boron, an assumption is made that boron will be equally distributed throughout total body
7 water. The fraction of absorbed boron distributed to the plasma compartment, then, will be
8 proportional to the size of the plasma compartment relative to total body water.
9

10 The data in the published literature are insufficient for establishing the f_p values for
11 pregnant rats and humans, directly. However, f_p values can be estimated indirectly with a few
12 assumptions. Data are available to determine comparative human and rat values for total body
13 water to body mass ratios (females and males) and plasma volume to body mass ratios (males
14 only). Using nonpregnant females as surrogates, the average ratios of total body water (M_w) to
15 body mass for pregnant humans and rats are about 0.560 and 0.650, respectively. These
16 estimates are based on summary data compiled from the published literature by the National
17 Academy of Sciences (NAS, 1956). Of the many available human studies, the one matching the
18 method of measurement (dessaication) for the rat study was selected, as method of measurement
19 appears to affect the value to some degree. No details or citations are presented for these values
20 in NAS (1956), however. The average plasma volume to body mass ratio ($V_p:M_b$) for adult
21 human males is about 0.0460 (NAS, 1956) and for adult male rats is about 0.0425 (40 to 45
22 mL/kg in three studies [NAS, 1956; Altman and Dittmer, 1964]). The average $V_p:M_b$ for adult
23 human nonpregnant females is about 0.044 (40 to 48 ml/kg; NAS, 1956; Altman and Dittmer,
24 1964) and increases to about 0.051 (51 ml/kg during pregnancy; NAS, 1956). No values were
25 found for female rats. Based on the limited data, $V_p:M_b$ is concluded to be the same for adult
26 human males and females. $V_p:M_b$ increases by about 10% during pregnancy for humans; an
27 assumption is made that similar increases will occur in pregnant rats. Adjusting for increases in
28 pregnancy yields a $V_p:M_b$ estimate of 0.047 for pregnant rats. Assuming that $M_w:M_b$ is the same
29 in pregnant and nonpregnant females, f_p values can be estimated by dividing $V_p:M_b$ by $M_w:M_b$
30 for each species and scaling the latter ratios for the difference between pregnant and nonpregnant
31 females. The resulting f_p values are 0.0911 (0.051/0.56) for humans and 0.0723 (0.047/0.65)
32 for rats.
33

34 Substituting the foregoing estimates for the variables in Equation 5.6 yields a value of
35 4.08 for VF_{AK} ($[3.3/1.02] \times [0.95/0.95] \times [0.0911/0.0723]$). The toxicokinetic data are
36 considered adequate for reducing UF_{AK} to unity. There are no data to replace the default value
37 for the toxicodynamic component of UF_A ; it remains the default value of 2.5. Thus, the
38 toxicokinetic portion of the interspecies uncertainty factor is replaced by the toxicokinetic
39 variability factor of 4.08 (i.e., $VF_{AK} = 4.08$, $UF_{AK} = 1$) and UF_A is reduced to a factor of 2.5,
40 corresponding to the default value for UF_{AD} .²

²Note that, although VF_{AK} is specified to three significant digits, variability and uncertainty factors are generally not considered this precise. An extra digit (or two) is carried through to the final calculation of the RfD to avoid intermediate round-off errors.

1 **5.1.3.5. *Intraspecies Uncertainty (UF_H)***
2

3 Conceptually, the intraspecies toxicokinetic variability factor (VF_{HK}) accounts for the
4 range of human interindividual variability from where VF_{AK} left off to where the sensitive
5 subpopulation is adequately protected. For boron, the range is between the mean and a lower
6 bound percentile of boron clearance in the pregnant human population. VF_{HK} needs to cover a
7 sufficient fraction of the population such that the probability of having both a low clearance and
8 high sensitivity (on the toxicodynamic scale) is so low that no adverse effects are expected in the
9 population. In this case, a value for VF_{HK} is sought that gives 99.9% coverage of the population
10 variability. A relatively large coverage is chosen, as the population at risk is very large and this
11 factor addresses population variability rather than uncertainty (which is addressed by UF_{HK}). A
12 coverage of 99.9% is consistent with the U.S. EPA Exposure Assessment Guidelines (U.S. EPA,
13 1992) for determination of absolute upper bound exposure variability (VF_{HK} being a
14 representation of relative internal exposure).
15

16 Estimation of extreme percentiles for *variability* (as opposed to uncertainty) from most
17 data sets is problematic, as those values tend to fall outside the range of observations and are
18 much more sensitive to measurement and model uncertainty than central tendency estimates. A
19 judgement must be made for each data set as to whether such estimates can be made, with
20 particular attention to the study design, overall variance, and extent of extrapolation required.
21 Accordingly, although the study of Pahl et al. (2001) provides a direct estimate of boron
22 clearance variability in pregnant women, the data are judged to be inadequate for this purpose,
23 particularly for estimating values in the extreme tails. The Pahl et al. (2001) study was not
24 designed to assess interindividual variability, and lacked controls for dietary intake of boron.
25 The variance of boron clearance in this study was somewhat high (coefficient of variation =
26 0.54), such that extrapolation to a low percentile would be far outside the range of observations.
27 The available data on human glomerular filtration rate (GFR) are somewhat more extensive than
28 the boron clearance data from Pahl et al. (2001). Therefore, GFR was evaluated as a surrogate
29 for boron clearance and variability in GFR used to estimate variability in boron clearance.
30 Boron clearance rate differs from GFR in that boron is reabsorbed into the blood stream from the
31 kidney tubules. In the Pahl et al. (2001) study, reabsorption was relatively high, with an average
32 fractional excretion of 57%. However, the dietary intake of boron for these subjects was
33 probably very low compared to the RfD, estimated to be 10-fold below the RfD on average (U.S.
34 Borax, 2000). The most relevant measure of boron clearance variability is at boron exposure
35 levels near the RfD, as the RfD is the exposure level at which the degree of protection of the
36 sensitive subpopulation needs to be determined. As tubular reabsorption is generally a constant
37 (rather than proportional) rate, reabsorption at higher doses near the RfD would likely be a minor
38 factor in the variability of boron clearance. That is, boron clearance rates would approach pure
39 glomerular filtration rates and should have the same variability as GFR in the population. Also,
40 boron is not actively secreted into the urine and would tend to be more like the substances used
41 to measure GFR in humans in this respect.
42

43 GFR data have been used previously in this context by Dourson et al. (1998), who
44 assessed the magnitude of variance of GFR in pregnant women for application as an
45 interindividual toxicokinetic adjustment factor for the boron RfD. Dourson et al. (1998)

1 proposed the ratio of the mean GFR to the GFR value 2 standard deviations below the mean
2 (mean/[mean - 2 s.d.]) as the metric for the adjustment factor.

3
4 The interindividual (intra-human) variability factor is calculated as

$$VF_{HK} = \frac{GFR_{AVG}}{GFR_{LOW}} \quad (5.7)$$

7
8 where GFR_{AVG} and GFR_{LOW} are the mean GFR and “lower bound,” respectively, for the
9 population of healthy pregnant women, averaged across the entire gestational period. In order to
10 be consistent with the interspecies VF_{AK} model (and the RfD methodology, itself), GFR must be
11 expressed in units of mL/min per kg body weight (mL/min-kg). The numerator of the GFR ratio
12 is the average value in the population because the interspecies toxicokinetic extrapolation “ends”
13 at that point. The lower bound represents a low GFR value that provides sufficient coverage of
14 the population for adequate protection of the sensitive subpopulation. In this case, GFR_{LOW} is
15 defined as the 0.1 percentile (0.001 fractile) value of the population GFR distribution, which
16 gives 99.9% coverage of the population variability.

17
18 GFR is measured most accurately by substrates that are not metabolized and not actively
19 secreted or reabsorbed from the kidney tubules, such as inulin and iohexol. Three such studies
20 were located in the published literature that address GFR variability in pregnant women (Dunlop,
21 1981; Krutzén et al., 1992; Sturgiss et al., 1996). Only the Dunlop study provides sufficient
22 information to evaluate GFR variability relative to body weight, as required by the model. Using
23 the separate tables of individual body weights and absolute GFR measurements (in mL/min)
24 presented in Dunlop (1981), relative GFR measurements (mL/min-kg) can be calculated for each
25 subject for each observation period (1st, 2nd, and 3rd trimester). The resulting data are shown in
26 Table 9, with the average values in the last column. The average values are consistent with
27 either a normal or lognormal distribution (Kolmogoroff-Smirnoff test using the Dallal-Wilkinson
28 approximation for calculating the p-value in testing composite normality; computations
29 performed in S-Plus[®] ver 4.5 for Windows[®]). The lognormal form is chosen as most
30 representative, as the distribution is a ratio of two random strictly-positive variables, and would
31 be expected to be lognormally-distributed in the limit (for large sample sizes). In addition, GFR
32 values very close to zero will not be relevant, as dialysis would be required. A normal
33 distribution would therefore have too much density in impossible (negative) or irrelevant GFR
34 value ranges. The lognormal distribution for body-weight-corrected GFR (Table 9, last column)
35 is characterized by a geometric mean (GM) of 2.257 mL/min-kg and a geometric standard
36 deviation (GSD) of 1.160 mL/min-kg, as estimated by the method of moments. The 0.1
37 percentile value is 1.427 mL/min-kg, which is close to the lowest observed value of 1.56
38 mL/min-kg. The arithmetic mean is 2.281 mL/min-kg. The corresponding VF_{HK} value is 1.60
39 (2.281/1.427).

40
41 By comparison, the GM and GSD for boron clearance in pregnant women in the Pahl et
42 al. (2001) study were 0.863 and 1.892, respectively. The GSD of 1.892 corresponds to a 18-fold
43 greater log-variance than that for the body-weight-adjusted GFR values from the Dunlop study.

1 **Table 9. GFR Corrected for Body Weight, from Dunlop (1981)**
 2

Subject	GFR (mL/min-kg)			
	1 st Trimester	2 nd Trimester	3 rd Trimester	Average
1	2.648	2.539	2.578	2.588
2	3.315	2.756	2.835	2.969
3	2.097	2.113	1.446	1.885
4	2.278	2.286	1.902	2.155
5	1.990	2.089	1.235	1.772
6	2.323	2.295	2.933	2.517
7	3.004	2.575	2.799	2.793
8	2.334	2.391	2.482	2.402
9	2.040	1.935	2.124	2.033
10	2.823	2.619	2.369	2.604
11	2.182	2.071	2.172	2.141
12	2.059	2.179	1.529	1.922
13	2.651	3.078	2.607	2.779
14	3.065	2.621	2.370	2.685
15	2.339	2.125	2.014	2.159
16	2.075	1.738	1.269	1.694
17	2.031	2.322	1.498	1.950
18	2.490	1.556	2.325	2.123
19	2.458	2.887	2.212	2.519
20	2.485	2.364	2.471	2.440
21	2.128	2.020	1.851	2.000
22	2.304	2.500	2.169	2.324
23	2.465	2.075	2.103	2.214
24	2.221	2.361	2.094	2.225

Subject	GFR (mL/min-kg)			
	1 st Trimester	2 nd Trimester	3 rd Trimester	Average
25	2.326	1.969	2.072	2.122
mean	2.405	2.299	2.138	2.281
std. dev.	0.34848	0.35189	0.47158	0.33826
GM	2.383	2.272	2.083	2.257
GSD	1.1472	1.1685	1.2718	1.1600

1
2
3
4
5
6

1 The 0.1 percentile value would be more than a factor of 2 lower than the smallest observation
2 and would yield a VF_{HK} of 8.48. The lognormal approach differs from Dourson et al. (1998;
3 “Dourson method”) in that a specific percentile from an explicit distribution is chosen. The
4 primary advantage of the Dourson method is that no assumptions are required as to the form of
5 the distribution (“distribution free”). However, a normal distribution is somewhat implicit in the
6 use of the mean and standard deviation. Also, the Dourson method does not explicitly exclude
7 negative values. The Dourson method applied to the same data (Table 9, last column) would
8 yield a VF_{HK} of 1.42 ($2.28/[2.28 - 2 \times 0.3383]$). If a normal distribution were to be assumed in
9 this approach, two standard deviations below the mean corresponds to the 0.275th percentile.
10 Three standard deviations below the mean (0.135th percentile) provides population coverage
11 closer to 99.9%. Using three standard deviations in the Dourson method would yield a VF_{HK} of
12 1.80. Assuming a normal distribution for the data and using the 0.1 percentile for GFR_{LOW} results
13 in a VF_{HK} of 1.85. Thus, the lognormal/0.1 percentile approach ($VF_{HK} = 1.60$) is slightly more
14 conservative than the Dourson method that uses a two-fold standard deviation difference in the
15 metric ($VF_{HK} = 1.42$), but slightly less conservative than assuming a normal distribution with a
16 0.1 percentile for GFR_{LOW} . The lognormal value is preferred because the normal distribution
17 approach for GFR does not exclude the probability density of negative values, which will bias
18 VF_{HK} toward higher values.
19

20 **5.1.3.6. Residual Uncertainty in Human Interindividual Toxicokinetics**

21
22 Although the Dunlop (1981) study provides the only direct basis for establishing VF_{HK} ,
23 there is a suggestion that it may underestimate the variance of GFR (corrected or uncorrected) in
24 pregnant women. Both Krutzén et al. (1992) and Sturgiss et al. (1996) report higher variances
25 for uncorrected GFR (averaged across entire gestational period) in pregnant women. The mean
26 and standard deviation for uncorrected GFR reported by Krutzén et al. (1992) are 195 and 32
27 mL/min, respectively. Averaging the early and late pregnancy GFR observations for each
28 individual (to obtain a cross-pregnancy average) in the Sturgiss et al. (1996) study, results in a
29 mean and standard deviation of 138.9 and 26.08 mL/min, respectively. Calculated similarly, the
30 mean and standard deviation for average GFR (across all three trimesters) in the Dunlop (1981)
31 study are 150.5 and 17.63 mL/min, respectively. The corresponding variances are 1024, 900,
32 and 311 (mL/min)², respectively, for the Krutzén et al. (1992), Sturgiss et al. (1996), and Dunlop
33 (1981) studies. The average variance across all three studies is 745 (mL/min)². Thus, population
34 variance estimates for uncorrected GFR based solely on the Dunlop study could possibly
35 underestimate true variance by a factor of 2.5 to 3.
36

37 In order to analyze the impact of variance underestimation on the lognormal model,
38 however, the variance of the logarithms of the observations (“log-variance”) must be compared.
39 The log-variances (in natural log units) for uncorrected GFR observations in the Dunlop (1981)
40 and Sturgiss et al. (1996) studies, calculated directly from the individual observations, are
41 0.01453 and 0.03533, respectively. Although, Krutzén et al. (1992) does not present individual
42 observations, the log-variance can be estimated indirectly from the mean and standard deviation
43 assuming log-normality ($\text{var}_{\log} = \log[1 + \text{sd}^2/\text{mean}^2]$; Evans et al., 1993). With this assumption,
44 the log-variance of a lognormal distribution with a mean of 195 and standard deviation of 32 is
45 0.02659. The average log-variance across all three studies is 0.02548. Thus, population log-

1 variance estimates for *uncorrected* GFR based solely on the Dunlop study could possibly
2 underestimate true variance by a factor of 1.75 to 2.43, the former based on comparison with the
3 cross-study mean and the latter being a worst-case estimate.
4

5 Renal clearance (including GFR), however, tends to be correlated with body surface area,
6 which is generally how clearance values are presented in the medical literature. As body surface
7 area is closely related to body weight, the variance of body-weight-corrected GFR observations
8 would be expected to be lower than that for the uncorrected observations. However, this is not
9 the case for the Dunlop (1981) data, where correcting for body weight actually raised the
10 coefficient of variation ($CV = \text{std. dev.}/\text{mean}$) slightly, from 0.131 to 0.136; correcting for body
11 surface area lowered the CV to only 0.117. A slightly larger reduction in variance was reported
12 by Krutzén et al. (1992) after correcting for surface area; the CV was lowered to 0.120 from an
13 uncorrected value of 0.164. The lack of reduction of GFR variance when correcting for body
14 weight suggests that there is a fairly significant contribution of *uncertainty* from measurement
15 error and other factors in the variance of the Dunlop (1981) data and, by implication in the other
16 studies, as well. Also, some of the difference of the variances in the three studies can probably
17 be attributed to uncertainty arising from subtle differences in experimental design and execution.
18

19 As VF_{HK} is meant to be a strict representation of population *variability*, the extent to
20 which uncertainty is aggregated in the data mitigates the underestimation of true population
21 variance. This is particularly manifest in the extreme tails of the distribution, such as the
22 extreme lower end that this assessment addresses. Therefore, it seems unlikely that the Dunlop-
23 based corrected GFR estimate could underestimate the population variance by as much as the
24 worst-case estimate of 2.43-fold, but still may represent as much as a 1.5- to 2.0-fold
25 underestimate. The VF_{HK} values corresponding to increased log-variances of 1.5- and 2.0-fold
26 would be 1.68 and 1.81, which are factors of 1.05 and 1.13 greater than VF_{HK} of 1.60 as
27 calculated from Dunlop (1981). Accordingly, to account for uncertainty in population variance,
28 uncertainty pertaining to the use of GFR as a surrogate for actual boron clearance, and
29 uncertainty in fetal kinetics, UF_{HK} is assigned a value of 1.20, rather than 1.0.
30

31 Another consideration is that a decrement in renal function, itself, can predispose
32 individuals to adverse effects that manifest both as maternal and fetal adverse effects.
33 Decrements in the levels of GFR may increase risks for adverse developmental outcomes effects,
34 effects that cannot be distinguished from other potential adverse effects of boron. Thus, a certain
35 level of renal function may bound the range of variance for the risk-relevant VF_{HK} toxicokinetic
36 measure and would serve as a physiological basis for GFR_{LOW} in Equation 5.7. Establishing the
37 level unequivocally is problematic, as the incidence, severity, and relevance (to boron toxicity)
38 of adverse pregnancy outcomes associated with low GFR is difficult to establish. Further
39 complicating the issue are the metrics reported in the literature; pregnancy outcomes are
40 commonly related to pre-pregnancy measures of renal function, which are generally expressed as
41 serum creatinine levels. There are no data directly relating GFR or serum creatinine levels in
42 pregnant women to adverse pregnancy outcomes. The approach taken in the literature reflects
43 the physicians' need to advise kidney patients prior to becoming pregnant. Also, at lower
44 (normal) serum creatinine levels, serum creatinine is a fairly reliable measure of GFR. At higher
45 serum creatinine levels (lower GFR), the relationship apparently disappears (Levey et al., 1988).

1 However, a linear regression analysis of the log-log transformation of the published data
2 (Shemesh et al., 1985, reproduced in Levey et al., 1988) shows a significant relationship over a
3 wide range of serum creatinine levels (see Appendix C). From this analysis a ratio of average
4 GFR to GFR levels associated with significant adverse pregnancy outcomes (both GFR measures
5 in nonpregnant women) can be calculated. Assuming that the ratio would be similar for pregnant
6 women, it can be compared directly to VF_{HK} as supporting evidence.

7
8 Several clinical investigations in humans have demonstrated the increased risk of adverse
9 developmental and obstetrical complications (low birth weight, intrauterine growth retardation,
10 spontaneous abortion, abruptio placentae, fetal and neonatal death, etc.) with serum creatinine
11 levels above 1.4 mg/dl (Bear, 1976, 1978; Cunningham et al., 1990; Abe, 1996; Jungers et al.,
12 1997). Applying the linear regression analysis in Appendix C, a serum creatinine level of 1.4
13 mg/dl corresponds to a GFR of 39.8 mL/(min/1.73 m²).³ Similarly, the average serum creatinine
14 level of 0.8 mg/dl in the same population (nonpregnant women) corresponds to a GFR of 79.4
15 mL/(min/1.73 m²). Substituting 79.4 and 39.8 for GFR_{AVG} and GFR_{LOW} , respectively, in
16 Equation 5.7, yields a “physiological” VF_{HK} of 2.0, which is 25% larger than the “statistical”
17 VF_{HK} derived previously. There is considerable uncertainty in the regression model (Appendix
18 C) in the estimate of the lower GFR values, which is not accounted for in the physiological
19 estimate of VF_{HK} . Also, the GFR measurements on which the regression analysis (Appendix C)
20 is based are not strictly in the units required by the model (Eq. 5.7) and may also tend to
21 underestimate the population variance. Finally, the severity of the low-GFR effects and the
22 proportion of the population who would be affected is unclear. Overall, the clinical data
23 supporting the physiological approach are too far removed from the direct assessment needed to
24 establish VF_{HK} and serve only as support for the assessment. Therefore, the selection of 99.9%
25 variability coverage in the statistical approach does not seem excessive. The physiological
26 approach also supports a residual uncertainty value for UF_{HK} of greater than unity.

27
28 Thus, in Equation 5.1, VF_{HK} is assigned a value of 1.60, UF_{HK} is reduced to 1.2, and UF_{HD}
29 remains at its default value of $10^{0.5}$ ($VF_{HD} = 1$ by convention).

31 5.1.3.7. *RfD Calculation*

32
33 The RfD is calculated from Equation 5.1, where:

34		
35	D_C	= 10.3 mg/kg-day (Allen et al., 1996)
36	VF_{AK}	= 4.08 (data-derived)
37	VF_{AD}	= 1 (conventional; no data)
38	VF_{HK}	= 1.60 (data-derived)
39	VF_{HD}	= 1 (conventional; no data)
40	UF_{AK}	= 1 (residual)
41	UF_{AD}	= 2.5 (default)
42	UF_{HK}	= 1.2 (residual)

³ GFR values are corrected for body surface area in this study.

1 $UF_{HD} = 3.16$ (default)
2 $UF_X = 1$ ($UF_S \times UF_D \times UF_L$)
3 $MF = 1$
4 $AF_{TOT} = 61.9$ ($4.08 \times 1.60 \times 2.5 \times 1.2 \times 3.16$)
5 $RfD = 0.2$ mg/kg-day ($10.3/61.9 = 0.166$, rounded to one digit of precision)
6

7 **5.1.3.8. Uncertainty Factor Approaches Used by Others**

8

9 Others have used different methods to derive uncertainty factors.

10
11 The International Program on Chemical Safety (IPCS) used sub-divided uncertainty
12 factors to estimate Tolerable Intake Values (WHO, 1994; Renwick, 1993). This method allowed
13 for subdivision of each of the interspecies and intraspecies default uncertainty factors to
14 incorporate data on toxicokinetics or toxicodynamics. For interspecies uncertainty, the 10-fold
15 factor is divided into a default factor of $10^{0.6}$ (4.0) for toxicokinetics and $10^{0.4}$ (2.5) for
16 toxicodynamics in the absence of toxicokinetic and toxicodynamic data. This subdivision,
17 according to the authors, was based on the approximate 4-fold difference between rats and
18 humans in basic physiological parameters that are major determinants of clearance and
19 elimination of chemicals, such as cardiac output and renal and liver blood flows. For
20 intraspecies uncertainty, the 10-fold factor is subdivided into a default of $10^{0.5}$ (3.2) each for
21 toxicokinetics and toxicodynamics in the absence of toxicokinetic and toxicodynamic data.
22

23 Subsequently, the International Program for Chemical Safety (IPCS, 2001) published a
24 guidance document on the use of data to develop chemical specific adjustment factors. This
25 guidance calls for the use of a composite factor (CF), which is the composite of specific
26 adjustment factors (quantitative chemical specific data) for either toxicokinetics or
27 toxicodynamics and the remaining default uncertainty factors for which chemical specific data
28 were not available. The guidance document states that in some cases the split between
29 toxicokinetics and toxicodynamics in the framework may not be appropriate and some flexibility
30 in approach may need to be maintained; however, in the absence of data the defaults for
31 interspecies and intraspecies toxicokinetics and toxicodynamics are the same as in the previous
32 publication (WHO, 1994).
33

34 Several risk assessments have recently been completed for boron using an uncertainty
35 factor less than 100. A description of the critical effect chosen and the uncertainty factors used
36 follows.
37

38 The European Center for Ecotoxicology and Toxicology of Chemicals (ECETOC, 1994)
39 developed a Tolerable Daily Intake for developmental effects of boron. Decreased fetal body
40 weight in rats was chosen as the critical effect (Price et al., 1994) with a NOAEL of 9.6 mg
41 B/kg-day. A factor of $10^{0.5}$ was chosen for interspecies uncertainty factor due to the similarity in
42 toxicokinetics (metabolism and distribution were cited) between animals and humans. A default
43 factor of 10 was chosen for the intraspecies uncertainty factor. The composite uncertainty factor
44 was 30.
45

1 Murray (1995, 1996) used the Price et al. (1994) study choosing decreased fetal body
2 weight in rats as the critical effect with a NOAEL of 9.6 mg B/kg-day. The interspecies
3 uncertainty factor chosen was 4 (2 for toxicokinetics and 2 for toxicodynamics, $2 \times 2 = 4$). The
4 reasons cited for the reduced interspecies uncertainty factor for toxicokinetics were as follows:
5 boron is not metabolized in animals or humans, eliminating a major potential source of
6 toxicokinetic variation; is rapidly distributed throughout body water and does not accumulate;
7 the toxicity profile of boron is similar across species; and parameters of elimination were
8 considered by the author to be similar in humans and other animals. The reasons cited for the
9 reduced interspecies uncertainty factor for toxicodynamics were as follows: the sensitivity of the
10 target tissue receptor appears, to the author, to be similar across species based on the similarity
11 of symptoms of acute toxicity in animals and humans; and because developmental and
12 reproductive toxicity appear to be the most sensitive endpoint of toxicity in all animal species
13 tested. The intraspecies uncertainty factor chosen was 8 (2.5 for toxicokinetics and 3.2 for
14 toxicodynamics). The intraspecies toxicokinetic factor was decreased because metabolism is
15 normally the major source of pharmacokinetic variance in humans and borates are not
16 metabolized. The composite uncertainty factor chosen was $4 \times 8 = 32$.

17
18 The Institute for Evaluating Health Risks (IEHR, 1997) determined an Unlikely Effect
19 Level for Developmental Toxicity for Boron based on the benchmark dose for decreased fetal
20 body weight by Allen (1996). The interspecies uncertainty factor chosen for boron was $10^{0.5}$,
21 which includes $10^{0.25}$ each for toxicokinetics and toxicodynamics. The justification for reduction
22 of the default values was stated as commonality in the nature of the toxic response in the humans
23 versus that in the experimental animal and metabolic and toxicokinetic similarities among
24 species. The intraspecies uncertainty factor chosen for boron was a default value of 10. The
25 composite human sensitivity factor for developmental toxicity was 30.

26
27 In their Environmental Health Criteria Document, WHO (1998a) developed a Tolerable
28 Daily Intake for boron where decreased fetal body weight in rats was chosen as the critical effect
29 (Price et al., 1994) with a NOAEL of 9.6 mg B/kg/day. The interspecies uncertainty factor
30 chosen was $10^{0.5}$ ($10^{0.1} \times 10^{0.4} = 10^{0.5}$) which used a $10^{0.1}$ for toxicokinetics due to the similarity of
31 absorption, distribution, metabolism and elimination of boron in rats and humans and a $10^{0.4}$
32 (default) for toxicodynamics. The intraspecies uncertainty factor chosen was $10^{0.9}$
33 ($10^{0.4} \times 10^{0.5} = 10^{0.9}$), $10^{0.4}$ for toxicokinetics due to lack of metabolism in humans and $10^{0.5}$
34 (default) for toxicodynamics. The composite uncertainty factor was 32.

35
36 In their Guidelines for Drinking-Water Quality, WHO (1998b) developed a Tolerable
37 Daily Intake for boron to set a guidance value for drinking water. Decreased fetal body weight
38 in rats was chosen as the critical effect (Price et al., 1994) with a NOAEL of 9.6 mg B/kg/day. A
39 default value of 10 was chosen for the interspecies factor due to a reported lack of data to
40 support reduction in the toxicokinetic and pharmacodynamic factors. For intraspecies
41 extrapolation a default value of 3.2 for toxicokinetic data was reduced to 1.8 and a default value
42 of 3.2 was retained for toxicodynamic data. Thus the uncertainty factor for intraspecies
43 uncertainty was $1.8 \times 3.2 = 5.7$ rounded to 6. The composite uncertainty factor was considered to
44 be $10 \times 6 = 60$.

1 Dourson et al. (1998), as part of the development of WHO (1998b), developed a
2 Tolerable Daily Intake for boron. Although the authors agreed to the lack of metabolism and the
3 similarity in absorption and elimination of boron in animals and humans, interspecies variation
4 in kinetics for boron was considered to relate to renal clearance rates. A 3-fold clearance rate
5 difference between rats and humans for boron was estimated, after eliminating studies with little
6 confidence from an earlier projected 4-fold difference. The calculated renal clearance rate
7 difference (3-fold) between rats and humans for boron was considered by the authors to be
8 similar to a 4-fold difference that would be expected of other chemicals (Renwick, 1993). Based
9 on this difference in clearance rates, the authors (Dourson et al., 1998) chose not to reduce the
10 interspecies uncertainty factor for toxicokinetics or toxicodynamics. Therefore, a default value of
11 10 was chosen for the interspecies factor. For intraspecies uncertainty the toxicokinetic factor
12 was reduced from a default of 3.2 to 1.8. The authors proposed that the likely difference for
13 humans in boron kinetics occurs during pregnancy and is based on an increase in the GFR, a
14 recognized physiological adaptation during pregnancy. The estimation of the 1.8 factor for
15 intraspecies variation in toxicokinetics was based on a ratio of the mean GFR of 144 mL/min +/-
16 32(SD) from pooled data of healthy humans in late pregnancy (number of subjects not
17 mentioned) and this mean GFR minus two standard deviations from the mean to account for
18 variation in the average to the susceptible human $32(\text{SD}) \times 2 = 64$; $144(\text{GFR}) - 64(2\text{SDs}) = 80$; the
19 ratio of 1.8 was calculated as 144 mL/min divided by 80=1.8. The intraspecies toxicodynamic
20 factor used was a factor of 3.1, which the authors considered as a default factor, although
21 previous methodology considered it to be 3.2. The intraspecies uncertainty factor was
22 $1.8 \times 3.1 = 5.58$ rounded to 6. The composite uncertainty factor was $10 \times 6 = 60$.

23
24 Murray and Andersen (2001) detailed the use of reduced uncertainty factors for boron
25 risk assessments in recent years and noted the use of factors in the range of 25-60 using the
26 NOAEL from the Price et al. (1996a) rat developmental study. The authors recommended using
27 data derived uncertainty factors in a range of 22-44 using new rat and human clearance data
28 (Vaziri et al., 2001; Pahl et al., 2001). The authors detailed a method in which they estimated
29 the human dose expected to provide the same boric acid area under the curve in target tissues as
30 the NOAEL in rats and then applying reduced uncertainty factors for toxicokinetic and
31 toxicodynamic uncertainty to this estimated human NOAEL. Interspecies toxicokinetic value
32 was estimated at 3.1, while interspecies toxicodynamic uncertainty was estimated at 1.25-2.5.
33 Intraspecies factors for toxicokinetics was 1.8-2.0 and intraspecies toxicodynamics was 3.2.

34 35 **5.2. INHALATION REFERENCE CONCENTRATION (RfC)**

36
37 The available inhalation data are inadequate to support derivation of an RfC for boron
38 compounds.

39 40 **5.3. CANCER ASSESSMENT**

41
42 The available data are inadequate for evaluation of the human carcinogenic potential of
43 boron. Derivation of slope factors and unit risks is, therefore, precluded.
44
45

1 **6. MAJOR CONCLUSIONS IN THE CHARACTERIZATION OF HAZARD**
2 **AND DOSE RESPONSE**

3
4 **6.1. HUMAN HAZARD POTENTIAL**

5
6 Boron is a naturally-occurring element that is widespread in nature; the average
7 concentration in the earth's crust has been estimated to be 10 ppm (Woods, 1994). Boron in the
8 environment is always found chemically bound to oxygen, usually as alkali or alkaline earth
9 borates, or as boric acid (IEHR, 1997; U.S. EPA, 1987). Boric acid and sodium borates are
10 widely used for a variety of industrial purposes. Boron is not transformed or degraded in the
11 environment, but depending on environmental conditions (e.g., pH, moisture level), changes in
12 the specific form of boron and its transport can occur (ATSDR, 1992). The most important
13 source of exposure for human populations is ingestion of boron from food (primarily fruits and
14 vegetables) (Naghii and Samman, 1996a). Occupational exposure to boron dust and exposure to
15 boron in consumer products (e.g., cosmetics, medicines, insecticides) are other potentially
16 significant sources (ATSDR, 1992).

17
18 Boron is readily absorbed from the gastrointestinal tract following oral exposure (Schou
19 et al., 1984; Vanderpool et al., 1994). Boron is also absorbed following inhalation exposure,
20 although it is not clear how much is absorbed directly through the mucous membranes of the
21 respiratory tract and how much is cleared by mucociliary activity and swallowed (Culver et al.,
22 1994). Boron is not absorbed across intact skin, but is readily absorbed across damaged skin
23 (Draize and Kelley, 1959). Boric acid and borate compounds in the body exist primarily as
24 undissociated boric acid, which distributes evenly throughout the soft tissues of the body (Ku et
25 al., 1991; Naghii and Samman, 1996b). Although it does not accumulate in the soft tissues,
26 boron does accumulate in bone, reaching steady-state levels approximately 4-fold higher than
27 plasma levels after 1-4 weeks, depending on dose (Ku et al., 1991; Chapin et al., 1997). Boric
28 acid is not degraded in the body, but can form complexes with various biomolecules by
29 mechanisms that appear to be concentration dependent and reversible (IEHR 1997; WHO,
30 1998a). Boric acid is excreted primarily in the urine. It is cleared from the plasma with a half-
31 life of approximately 21 hours (Jansen et al., 1984a), but eliminated very slowly from bone
32 (Chapin et al., 1997).

33
34 Studies in laboratory animals conducted by oral exposure have identified the developing
35 fetus and the testes as the two most sensitive targets of boron toxicity in multiple species (Weir
36 and Fisher, 1972; Seal and Weeth, 1980; NTP, 1987; Fail et al., 1991; Price et al., 1996a,b; Field
37 et al., 1989). The testicular effects that have been reported include reduced organ weight and
38 organ:body weight ratio, atrophy, degeneration of the spermatogenic epithelium, impaired
39 spermatogenesis, reduced fertility and sterility (Weir and Fisher, 1972; Seal and Weeth, 1980;
40 NTP, 1987; Fail et al., 1991; Dixon et al., 1979; Linder et al., 1990; Treinen and Chapin, 1991;
41 Ku et al., 1993). The mechanism for boron's effect on the testes is not known, but the available
42 data (as reviewed by Fail et al., 1998) suggest an effect on the Sertoli cell, resulting in altered
43 physiological control of sperm maturation and release. The developmental effects that have been
44 reported following boron exposure include high prenatal mortality, reduced fetal body weight
45 and malformations and variations of the eyes, central nervous system, cardiovascular system, and

1 axial skeleton (Price et al., 1996a,b; Field et al., 1989). Increased incidences of short rib XIII (a
2 malformation) and wavy rib (a variation), and decreased incidence of rudimentary extra rib on
3 lumbar I (a variation), were the most common anomalies in both rats and mice. Cardiovascular
4 malformations, especially interventricular septal defect, and variations were the frequent
5 anomalies in rabbits. Fail et al. (1998) attributed reduced fetal growth, the most sensitive
6 developmental endpoint, to a general inhibition of mitosis by boric acid, as documented in
7 studies on the mammalian testis, insects, yeast, fungi, bacteria and viruses (Beyer et al., 1983;
8 Ku et al., 1993b).

9
10 Because boron is absorbed following inhalation exposure, is distributed evenly
11 throughout the soft tissues of the body as boric acid, and is not metabolized, there is no reason to
12 expect route-specific differences in systemic targets. Therefore, systemic target tissues
13 identified in oral studies comprise the potential systemic targets following inhalation exposure.
14 There may, however, be route-specific differences in ability to deliver toxic doses to the targets,
15 so that for example, very high exposure concentrations may be required to produce effects by
16 inhalation exposure. Portal-of-entry effects may also differ with exposure route. The literature
17 regarding toxicity of boron by inhalation exposure is sparse. There is a report of testicular
18 effects in a small number of Russian workers exposed to very high concentrations (Tarasenko et
19 al., 1972), but no evidence of an effect on fertility in a controlled epidemiology study in U.S.
20 borate production workers (Whorton et al., 1992, 1994a,b). Only irritant effects have been
21 associated with borate exposure in U.S. workers, with no evidence of an effect on pulmonary
22 function (Wegman et al., 1994; Garabrant et al., 1984, 1985). Irritant effects and reduced growth
23 were the only effects reported in the lone animal study (Wilding et al., 1959). These data are
24 inadequate to support derivation of an RfC for boron compounds.

25
26 No data were located regarding the existence of an association between cancer and boron
27 exposure in humans. Studies available in animals were inadequate to ascertain whether boron
28 causes cancer. The chronic rat feeding study conducted by Weir and Fisher (1972) was not
29 designed as a cancer bioassay. Only a limited number of tissues were examined
30 histopathologically, and the report failed to even mention tumor findings. The chronic mouse
31 study conducted by NTP (1987) was adequately designed, but the results are difficult to
32 interpret. There was an increase in hepatocellular carcinomas in low-dose, but not high-dose,
33 male mice that was within the range of historical controls. The increase was statistically
34 significant using the life table test, but not the incidental tumor test. The latter test is more
35 appropriate when the tumor in question is not the cause of death, as appeared to be the case for
36 this study. There was also a significant increase in the incidence of subcutaneous tumors in low-
37 dose male mice. However, once again the increase was within the range of historical controls
38 and was not seen in the high-dose group. Low survival in both the low- and high-dose male
39 groups (60 and 40%, respectively) may have reduced the sensitivity of this study for evaluation
40 of carcinogenicity. The chronic mouse study conducted by Schroeder and Mitchener (1975) was
41 inadequate to detect carcinogenicity because only one, very low dose level was used (0.95 mg
42 B/kg/day) and the MTD was not reached. Overwhelmingly, studies of boron compounds for
43 genotoxicity were negative, including studies in bacteria, mammalian cells and mice *in vivo*.
44 Under EPA's current guidelines for carcinogen risk assessment (U.S. EPA, 1986a), boron is
45 classified as Group D; not classifiable as to human carcinogenicity. Under the new proposed

1 guidelines (U.S. EPA, 1996a), the data are considered to be inadequate for evaluation of the
2 human carcinogenic potential of boron.

3 4 **6.2. DOSE RESPONSE**

5
6 The studies by Price et al. (1996a, 1994, 1990) and Heindel et al. (1992) in rats were
7 chosen as the critical developmental studies because they were well conducted studies of a
8 sensitive endpoint that identified both a NOAEL and LOAEL. Rats were more sensitive than
9 mice and rabbits, which were also studied for developmental toxicity (Price et al., 1996b;
10 Heindel et al., 1994). The dog study by Weir and Fisher (1972) identified the most sensitive
11 NOAEL and LOAEL for testicular effects. This study was not used to calculate the RfD due to
12 several limitations as stated in Section 4.2.1. Testicular effects were found at higher doses in
13 rats and mice in this and other studies (Weir and Fisher, 1972; Seal and Weeth, 1980; NTP,
14 1987; Fail et al., 1991; Dixon et al., 1979; Linder et al., 1990; Treinen and Chapin, 1991; Ku et
15 al., 1993).

16
17 The quantitative estimates of human risk as a result of exposure to boron are based on
18 animal experiments because no human data exist. The human dose that is likely to be without an
19 appreciable risk of deleterious noncancer effects during a lifetime (RfD) is 0.2 mg/kg-day. This
20 RfD was derived by the benchmark dose approach. Several BMD analyses were conducted
21 (Allen et al., 1996) using all relevant endpoints to analyze data from the Heindel et al. (1992)
22 and Price et al. (1996a, 1994) studies alone and the combined data from both studies. Changes
23 in fetal weight were analyzed by taking the average fetal weight for each litter with live fetuses.
24 Those averages were considered to represent variations in a continuous variable and a
25 continuous power model was used. For mean fetal weight analysis, the BMDL was defined as
26 the 95% lower bound on dose corresponding to a 5% decrease in the mean. BMDL values
27 calculated with a continuous power model for fetal body weight (litter weight averages) were
28 less than those for all other relevant endpoints. The BMDL based on the combined results of the
29 two studies chosen for development of the RfD was 10.3 mg B/kg-day, which was very close to
30 the NOAEL of 9.6 mg B/kg-day from the Price et al. (1996a, 1994) study. Because there are
31 data addressing the relationship of both interspecies and intra-human toxicokinetics for boron,
32 toxicokinetic variability factors were derived as replacements for the kinetic portion of the
33 interspecies and intra-human uncertainty factors (UF_A and UF_H). An interspecies kinetic
34 variability factor of 4.08 was estimated from the data of Varizi et al. (2001) and Pahl et al.
35 (2001). An intra-human kinetic variability factor of 1.60 was estimated from the data of Dunlop
36 (1981), using glomerular filtration rate as a surrogate for boron clearance. As there was some
37 nontrivial residual uncertainty in this analysis, a factor of 1.2 was assigned to the overall
38 intraspecies toxicokinetic uncertainty. The remaining uncertainty in the RfD derivation was
39 from toxicodynamics. Intra-human uncertainty was assigned the default value of 3.16. As
40 interspecies uncertainty was deemed to be greater for toxicokinetics than for toxicodynamics, a
41 smaller factor of 2.5 was used for interspecies toxicodynamic uncertainty. The product of all the
42 variability and uncertainty sub-factors served as the total adjustment factor of 61.9. The RfD
43 was derived by dividing the BMDL of 10.3 mg/kg-day by the adjustment factor and rounding to
44 one digit.

1 Confidence in the principal developmental studies is high; they are well-designed studies
2 that examined relevant developmental endpoints using a large number of animals. Similar
3 developmental effects were noted in rats, mice and rabbits. Confidence in the data base is high
4 due to the existence of several subchronic and chronic studies, as well as adequate reproductive
5 and developmental toxicology data. High confidence in the RfD follows.
6

7 The available data are inadequate to support derivation of an RfC, slope factor or unit
8 risk for boron compounds.

7. REFERENCES

- 1
2
3
4 Abe, S. (1996). Pregnancy in glomerulonephritic patients with reduced renal function.
5 Hypertens Pregnancy 15:305-312.
6
7 Alexander, GV; Nusbaum, RE; MacDonald, NS. (1951) The boron and lithium content of
8 human bones. J Biol Chem 192:489-496.
9
10 Allen, BC; Strong, PL; Price, CJ; Hubbard, SA; Datson, G.P. (1996) Benchmark dose analysis of
11 developmental toxicity in rats exposed to boric acid. Fund Appl Toxicol 32:194-204.
12
13 Altman, PL; Dittmer, DS. (1964) Biology Data Book. Fed Am Soc Exp Biol, Washington, DC.
14
15 Anderson, DL; Cunningham, WC; Lindstrom, TR. (1994) Concentrations and intakes of H, B, S,
16 K, Na, Cl, and NaCl in foods. J Food Comp Anal 7:59-82.
17
18 Astier, A; Baud, F; Fournier, A. (1988) Toxicokinetics of boron after a massive accidental
19 ingestion of boric acid. J Pharm Clin 7:57-62.
20
21 ATSDR (Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry). (1992) Toxicological Profile for
22 Boron and Compounds. Public Health Service, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services,
23 Atlanta, GA. TP-91/05.
24
25 Baird, SJS; Cohen, JT; Graham, JD; Shlyakhter, AI; Evans, JS. (1996) Noncancer risk
26 assessment: Probabilistic characterization of population threshold doses. Human Ecol Risk
27 Assess 2(1):78-99.
28
29 Baker, MD; Bogema, SC. (1986) Ingestion of boric acid by infants. Am J Emerg Med
30 4(4):358-361.
31
32 Bakke, JP. (1991) Evaluation of the potential of boric acid to induce unscheduled DNA synthesis
33 in the *in vitro* hepatocyte DNA repair assay using the male F-344 rat. (Unpublished study)
34 Submitted by U.S. Borax Corp. MRID No. 42038903.
35
36 Barnes, DG; Dourson, ML. (1988) Reference dose (RfD): Description and use in health risk
37 assessment. Reg Tox Pharmacol 8:471-486.
38
39 Bear, RA. (1976) Pregnancy in patients with renal disease. Obstet Gynecol 48:13-18.
40
41 Bear, R. (1978) Pregnancy in patients with chronic renal disease. CMA J 118:663-665.
42
43 Benson, WH; Birge, WJ; Dorrough, HW. (1984) Absence of mutagenic activity of sodium borate
44 (borax) and boric acid in the *Salmonella* preincubation test. Environ Toxicol Chem
45 3:209-214.

- 1 Beyer, KH; Bergfeld, FW; Berndt, WO; et al. (1983) Final report on the safety assessment of
2 sodium borate and boric acid. *J Am Coll Toxicol* 2(7):87-125.
3
- 4 Birmingham, DJ; Key, MM. (1963) Preliminary Survey, U.S. Borax Plant, Boron, CA (February
5 20, 1963). Occupational Health Research and Training Facility, Division of Occupational
6 Health, Public Health Service, U.S. Dept. Of Health, Education and Welfare, Cincinnati, OH.
7 (Cited in ACGIH, 1991)
8
- 9 Brown, TF; McCormick, ME; Morris, DR; Zeringue, LK. (1989) Effects of dietary boron on
10 mineral balance in sheep. *Nutr Res* 9:503-512.
11
- 12 Chapin, RE; Ku, WW. (1994) The reproductive toxicity of boric acid. *Environ Health Perspect*
13 102(Suppl 7):87-91.
14
- 15 Chapin, RE; Ku, WW; Kenney, MA; et al. (1997) The effects of dietary boron on bone strength
16 in rats. *Fund Appl Toxicol* 35:205-215.
17
- 18 Clarke, WB; Gibson, RS. (1988) Lithium, boron and nitrogen in 1-day diet composites and a
19 mixed-diet standard. *J Food Comp Anal* 1:209-220.
20
- 21 Cox, D; Lindley, D. (1974) *Theoretical Statistics*. Chapman & Hall, London.
22
- 23 Craan, AG; Myres, AW; Green, DW. (1997) Hazard assessment of boric acid in toys. *Reg Tox*
24 *Pharm* 26:271-280.
25
- 26 Culver, BD; Hubbard, SA. (1996) Inorganic boron health effects in humans: an aid to risk
27 assessment and clinical judgement. *J Trace Elem Exp Med* 9:175-184.
28
- 29 Culver, BD; Shen, PT; Taylor, TH; et al. (1994) The relationship of blood- and urine-boron to
30 boron exposure in borax-workers and the usefulness of urine-boron as an exposure marker.
31 *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 7):133-137.
32
- 33 Cunningham, FG; Cox, SM; Harstad, TW; Mason, RA; Prichard, JA. (1990) Chronic renal
34 disease and pregnancy outcome. *Am J Obste:Gynecol* 163:453-459.
35
- 36 Davidson, IWF; Parker, JC; Beliles, RP. (1986) Biological basis for extrapolation across
37 mammalian species. *Reg Tox Pharmacol* 6:211-237.
38
- 39 Demerec, M; Bentani, G; Flint, J. (1951) A survey of chemicals for mutagenic action on *E. coli*.
40 *Am Nat* 84(821):119-136.
41
- 42 Dieter, MP. (1994) Toxicity and carcinogenicity studies of boric acid in male and female
43 B6C3F₁ mice. *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 7):93-97.
44

1 Dixon, RL; Lee, IP; Sherins, RJ. (1976) Methods to assess reproductive effects of environmental
2 chemicals. Studies of cadmium and boron administered orally. Environ Health Perspect
3 13:59-67.

4
5 Dixon, RL; Sherins, RJ; Lee, IP. (1979) Assessment of environmental factors affecting male
6 fertility. Environ Health Perspect 30:53-68.

7
8 Dourson, ML. (1994) Methodology for establishing oral reference doses (RfDs). In: Risk
9 Assessment of Essential Elements, Mertz, W; Abernathy, CO; Olin, SS. Ed. ILSI Press,
10 Washington, DC. p. 51-61.

11
12 Dourson, ML; Stara, JF. (1983) Regulatory history and experimental support of uncertainty
13 (safety) factors. Reg Toxicol Pharmacol 3:224-238.

14
15 Dourson, M; Maier, A; Meek, B; Renwick, A; Ohanian, E; Poirier, K. (1998) Boron tolerable
16 intake re-evaluation of toxicokinetics for data derived uncertainty factors. Biol Trace Elem
17 Research 66(1-3):453-463.

18
19 Dunlop, W. (1981) Serial changes in renal haemodynamics during normal human pregnancy.
20 Br J Obstet Gynecol 88:1-9.

21
22 Draize, JH; Kelley, EA. (1959) The urinary excretion of boric acid preparations following oral
23 administration and topical applications to intact and damaged skin of rabbits. Toxicol Appl
24 Pharmacol 1:267-276.

25
26 ECETOC (European Centre for Ecotoxicology and Toxicology of Chemicals). (1994)
27 Reproductive and General Toxicology of Some Inorganic Borates and Risk Assessment for
28 Human Beings. Technical Report No. 65. Brussels, December.

29
30 Elwell, M. (1993) Letter to C. Smallwood, U.S. EPA, Cincinnati, OH. March 5.

31
32 Evans, M; Hastings, N; Peacock, B. (1993) Statistical Distributions, 2nd ed. Chapter 25.
33 Lognormal Distribution. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York. p. 102-105.

34
35 Fail, PA; George, JD; Grizzle, TB; Heindel, JJ; Chapin, RE. (1990) Final report on the
36 reproductive toxicity of boric acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in CD-1-Swiss mice. National
37 Toxicology Program, U.S. DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle Park, NC. NTP Report 90-105.

38
39 Fail, PA; George, JD; Seely, JC; Grizzle, TB; Heindel, JJ. (1991) Reproductive toxicity of boric
40 acid in Swiss (CD-1) mice: Assessment using the continuous breeding protocol. Fund Appl
41 Toxicol 17:225-239.

42
43 Fail, PA; Chapin, RE; Price, CJ; Heindel, JJ. (1998) General, reproductive, developmental, and
44 endocrine toxicity of boronated compounds. Reprod Toxicol 12:1-18.

1 Field, EA; Price, CJ; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Morrissey, RE. (1989) Final report on the
2 Developmental Toxicity of Boric Acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in CD-1-Swiss Mice. NTP Final
3 Report No. 89-250. National Toxicology Program, U.S. DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle
4 Park, NC, August 11.
5
6 Forbes, RM; Mitchell, HHJ. (1957) Accumulation of dietary boron and strontium in young adult
7 albino rats. *Arch Ind Health* 16:489-492.
8
9 Forbes, RM; Cooper, AR; Mitchell, HH. (1954) On the occurrence of beryllium, boron, cobalt
10 and mercury in human tissues. *J Biol Chem* 209:857-865.
11
12 Friis-Hansen, B; Aggerbeck B; Jansen, JA. (1982) Unaffected blood boron levels in newborn
13 infants treated with a boric acid ointment. *Food Chem Toxicol* 20:451-454.
14
15 Garabrant, DH; Bernstein, L; Peters, JM; Smith, TJ. (1984) Respiratory and eye irritation from
16 boron oxide and boric acid dusts. *J Occup Med* 26:584-586.
17
18 Garabrant, DH; Bernstein, L; Peters, JM; et al. (1985) Respiratory effects of borax dust. *Br J Ind*
19 *Med* 42:831-837.
20
21 Haworth, S; Lawlor, T; Mortelmans, K; Speck, W; Zeiger, E. (1983) Salmonella mutagenicity
22 test results for 250 chemicals. *Environ Mutagen (Suppl.)*1:3-142.
23
24 Heindel, JJ; Price, CJ; Field, EA; et al. (1992) Developmental toxicity of boric acid in mice and
25 rats. *Fund Appl Toxicol* 18:266-277.
26
27 Heindel, JJ; Price, CJ; Schwetz, BA. (1994) The developmental toxicity of boric acid in mice,
28 rats and rabbits. *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 7):107-112.
29
30 Hunt, CD. (1994) The biochemical effects of physiologic amounts of dietary boron in animal
31 nutrition models. *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 7):35-43.
32
33 Hunt, CD. (1996) Biochemical effects of physiological amounts of dietary boron. *J Trace Elem*
34 *Exp Med* 9:185-213.
35
36 IEHR (Institute for Evaluating Health Risks). (1997) An assessment of boric acid and borax
37 using the IEHR evaluative process for assessing human developmental and reproductive toxicity
38 of agents. *Reprod Toxicol* 11:123-160.
39
40 IPCS (International Programme on Chemical Safety) (2001) Guidance Document for the Use of
41 Data on Development of Chemical-Specific Adjustment Factors (CSAF) for Interspecies
42 Differences and Human Variability in Dose/Concentration Response Assessment.
43
44 Ishii, Y; Fujizuka, N; Takahashi, T; et al. (1993) A fatal case of acute boric acid poisoning. *Clin*
45 *Toxicol* 31(2):345-352.

- 1 Iyengar, GV; Clarke, WB; Downing, RG; Tanner, JT. (1988) Lithium in biological and dietary
2 materials. Proc Intl Workshop, Trace Elem Anal Chem Med Biol 5:267-269.
3
- 4 Iyer, VN; Szybalski, W. (1958) Two simple methods for the detection of chemical mutagens.
5 Appl Microbiol 6:23-29.
6
- 7 Jansen, JA; Andersen, J; Schou, JS. (1984a) Boric acid single dose pharmacokinetics after
8 intravenous administration to man. Arch Toxicol 55:64-67.
9
- 10 Jansen, JA; Schou, JS; Aggerback, A. (1984b) Gastrointestinal absorption and *in vitro* release of
11 boric acid from water emulsifying ointments. Food Chem Toxicol 22:49-53.
12
- 13 Job, C. (1973) Absorption and excretion of orally administered boron. Z Angew Bader-
14 Klimahelik 20:137-142.
15
- 16 Jungers, P; Chauveau, D; Choukroun, G; et al. (1997) Pregnancy in women with impaired renal
17 function. Clin Nephrol 47(5):281-288.
18
- 19 Kavlock, RJ; Allen, BC; Faustman, EM; Kimmel, CA. (1995) Dose response assessments for
20 developmental toxicity: IV. Benchmark doses for fetal weight changes. Fund Appl Toxicol
21 26:211-222.
22
- 23 Kent, NL; McCance, RA. (1941) The absorption and excretion of "minor" elements by man. I.
24 Silver, gold, lithium, boron and vanadium. Biochem J 35:837-844.
25
- 26 Krutzen, F; Olofsson, P; Back, SE; Nilsson-Ehle, P. (1992) Glomerular filtration rate in
27 pregnancy; a study in normal subjects and in patients with hypertension, preeclampsia and
28 diabetes. Scand J Clin Lab Invest 52:387-392.
29
- 30 Ku, WW; Chapin, RE. (1994) Mechanism of the testicular toxicity of boric acid in rats. *In vivo*
31 and *in vitro* studies. Environ Health Perspect 102(Suppl. 7):99-105.
32
- 33 Ku, WW; Chapin, RE; Moseman, RF; Brink, RE; Pierce, KD; Adams, KY. (1991) Tissue
34 disposition of boron in male Fischer rats. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 111:145-151.
35
- 36 Ku, WW; Chapin, RE; Wine, RN; Gladen, BC. (1993a) Testicular toxicity of boric acid (BA):
37 Relationship of dose to lesion development and recovery in the F344 rat. Reprod Toxicol
38 7:305-319.
39
- 40 Ku, WW; Shih, LM; Chapin, RE. (1993b) The effects of boric acid (BA) on testicular cells in
41 culture. Reprod Toxicol 7:321-331.
42
- 43 Landolph, JR. (1985) Cytotoxicity and negligible genotoxicity of borax and borax ores to
44 cultured mammalian cells. Am J Ind Med 7:31-43.
45

1 Lee, IP; Sherins, RJ; Dixon, RL. (1978) Evidence for induction of germinal aplasia in male rats
2 by environmental exposure to boron. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 45:577-590.
3
4 Levey, AS; Perrone, RD; Madaias, NE. (1988) Serum creatinine and renal function. *Ann Rev*
5 *Med* 39:465-490.
6
7 Linder, RE; Strader, LF; Rehnberg, GL. (1990) Effect of acute exposure to boric acid on the
8 male reproductive system of the rat. *J Toxicol Environ Health* 31:133-146.
9
10 Litovitz, TL; Klein-Schwartz, W; Oderda, GM; Schmitz, BF. (1988) Clinical manifestations of
11 toxicity in a series of 784 boric acid ingestions. *Am J Emerg Med* 6:209-213.
12
13 Locksley, HB; Sweet, WH. (1954) Tissue distribution of boron compounds in relation to
14 neutron-capture therapy of cancer. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 86:56-63.
15
16 Mertz, W. (1993) Essential trace metals: new definitions based on new paradigms. *Nutr Rev*
17 51(10):287-295.
18
19 Murray, FJ. (1995) A human health risk assessment of boron (boric acid and borax) in drinking
20 water. *Reg Toxicol Pharmacol* 22:221-230.
21
22 Murray, FJ. (1996) Issues in boron risk assessment: Pivotal study, uncertainty factors and ADI's
23 *J Trace Elem Exp Med* 9:231.
24
25 Murray, FJ; Andersen, ME. (2001) Data-derived uncertainty factors: Boric acid (BA) as a case
26 study. *Human Eco Risk Assess* 7(1):125-138.
27
28 Naghii, MR; Samman, S. (1996a) The boron content of selected foods and the estimation of its
29 daily intake among free-living subjects. *J Am College Nutr* 15(6):614-619.
30
31 Naghii, MR; Samman, S. (1996b) The effect of boron supplementation on the distribution of
32 boron in selected tissues and on testosterone synthesis in rats. *Nutr Biochem* 7:507-512.
33
34 Naghii, MR; Samman, S. (1997) The effect of boron supplementation on its urinary excretion
35 and selected cardiovascular risk factors in healthy male subjects. *Biol Trace Element Res*
36 56:273-286.
37
38 NAS (National Academy of Sciences). (1956) *Handbook of Biological Data*, Spector, WS., Ed.
39 W.B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia and London.
40
41 Nielsen, GH. (1970) Percutaneous absorption of boric acid from boron-containing preparations
42 in rats. *Acta Pharmacol Toxicol* 28:413-424.
43
44 Nielsen, FH. (1991) Nutritional requirements for boron, silicon, vanadium, nickel, and arsenic:
45 Current knowledge and speculation. *FASEB J* 5:2661-2667.

1 Nielsen, GH. (1992) Facts and fallacies about boron. *Nutr Today* 27:6-12.
2
3 Nielsen, FH. (1994) Biochemical and physiologic consequences of boron deprivation in humans.
4 *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl. 7):59-63.
5
6 Nielsen, RH. (1996) Evidence for the nutritional essentiality of boron. *J Trace Elem Exp Med*
7 9:215-229.
8
9 Nielsen, FH; Hunt, CD; Mullen, LM; Hunt, JR. (1987) Effect of dietary boron on mineral,
10 estrogen, and testosterone metabolism in post-menopausal women. *FASEB J* 1:394-397.
11
12 NRC (National Research Council). (1983) Risk Assessment in the Federal Government:
13 Managing the Process. Committee on the Institutional Means for Assessment of Risks to Public
14 Health, Commission on Life Sciences, NRC, Washington, DC. National Academy Press.
15
16 NRC (National Research Council). (1989) Recommended Dietary Allowances, 10th ed.
17 National Academy Press, Washington, DC. p. 267.
18
19 NTP (National Toxicology Program). (1987) Toxicology and Carcinogenesis Studies of Boric
20 Acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in B6C3F1 Mice (feed studies). NTP Tech. Rep. Ser. No. 324.
21 U.S. DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle Park, NC.
22
23 Odunola, OA. (1997) Individual and combined genotoxic response of boric acid and aflatoxin B₁
24 in *Escherichia coli* PQ37. *East Afr Med J* 74:499-502.
25
26 O'Loughlin, KG. (1991) Bone marrow erythrocyte micronucleus assay of boric acid in Swiss-
27 Webster mice. (Unpublished study) Submitted by U.S. Borax Corp. MRID No. 42038904.
28
29 O'Sullivan, K; Taylor, M. (1983) Chronic boric acid poisoning in infants. *Arch Dis Child*
30 58:737-739.
31
32 Owen, EC. (1944) The excretion of borate by the dairy cow. *J Dairy Res* 13(3):243-248.
33
34 Pahl, MV; Culver, BD; Strong, PL; Murray, FJ; Vaziri, ND. (2001) The effect of pregnancy on
35 renal clearance of boron in humans: a study based on normal dietary intake of boron. *Toxicol*
36 *Sci* 60(2):252-256.
37
38 Penland, JG. (1994) Dietary boron, brain function and cognitive performance. *Env Health*
39 *Perspect* 102(7):65-72.
40
41 Price, CJ; Field, EA; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Morrissey, RE; Schwetz, BA. (1990)
42 Developmental Toxicity of Boric Acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in Sprague Dawley Rats. NTP
43 Report No. 90-105 (and Report Supplement No. 90-105A). National Toxicology Program, U.S.
44 DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle Park, NC, May 1.
45

1 Price, CJ; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Heindel, JJ; Schwetz, BA. (1991) Final report on the
2 Developmental Toxicity of Boric Acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in New Zealand White Rabbits.
3 NTP TER-90003. National Toxicology Program, U.S. DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle
4 Park, NC, November (and Laboratory Supplement No. TER-90003, December).
5
6 Price, CJ; Marr, MC; Myers, CB. (1994) Determination of the No-Observable-Adverse-Effect
7 Level (NOAEL) for Developmental Toxicity in Sprague-Dawley (CD) Rats Exposed to Boric
8 Acid in Feed on Gestational Days 0 to 20, and Evaluation of Postnatal Recovery through
9 Postnatal Day 21. Final report. (3 volumes, 716 pp). RTI Identification No. 65C-5657-200.
10 Research Triangle Institute, Center for Life Science, Research Triangle Park, NC.
11
12 Price, CJ; Strong, PL; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Murray, FJ. (1996a.) Developmental toxicity
13 NOAEL and postnatal recovery in rats fed boric acid during gestation. *Fund Appl Toxicol*
14 32:179-193.
15
16 Price, CJ; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Seely, JC; Heindel, JJ; Schwetz, BA. (1996b) The
17 developmental toxicity of boric acid in rabbits. *Fund Appl Toxicol* 34:176-187.
18
19 Price, CJ; Strong, PL; Murray, FJ; Goldberg, MM. (1997) Blood boron concentrations in
20 pregnant rats fed boric acid throughout gestation. *Rep Toxicol* 11(6):833-842.
21
22 Renwick, AG. (1991) Safety factors and establishment of acceptable daily intake. *Food Add*
23 *Contam* 8(2):135-150.
24
25 Renwick, AG. (1993) Data-derived safety factors for the evaluation of food additives and
26 environmental contaminants. *Food Add Contam* 10(3):275-305.
27
28 Rudd, CJ. (1991) Mouse lymphoma cell mutagenesis assay (tK+/-/tK-/-) of boric acid.
29 (Unpublished study) Submitted by U.S. Borax Corp. MRID No. 4203902.
30
31 Sayli, BS; Tuccar, E; Elhan, AH. (1988) An assessment of fertility in boron-exposed Turkish
32 subpopulations. *Rep Toxicol* 12(3):297-304.
33
34 Schou, JS; Jansen, JA; Aggerbeck, B. (1984) Human pharmacokinetics and safety of boric acid.
35 *Arch Toxicol* 7:232-235.
36
37 Schroeder, HA; Mitchener, M. (1975) Life-term effects of mercury, methyl mercury, and nine
38 other trace metals on mice. *J Nutr* 105:453-458.
39
40 Seal, BS; Weeth, HJ. (1980) Effect of boron in drinking water on the male laboratory rat. *Bull*
41 *Environ Contam Toxicol* 25:782-789.
42
43 Settimi, L; Elovaara, E; Savolainen, H. (1982) Effects of extended peroral borate ingestion on rat
44 liver and brain. *Toxicol Lett* 10:219-223.
45

1 Stewart, KR. (1991) Salmonella/microsome plate incorporation assay of boric acid.
2 (Unpublished study) Submitted by U.S. Borax Corp. MRID No. 4203901.
3
4 Sturgiss, SN; Wilkinson, R; Davison, JM. (1996) Renal reserve during human pregnancy. *Am J*
5 *Physiol* 271:F16-F20.
6
7 Stuttgen, G; Siebel, T; Aggerbeck, B. (1982) Absorption of boric acid through human skin
8 depending on the type of vehicle. *Arch Dermatol Res* 272:21-29.
9
10 Swan, SH; Beaumont, JJ; Hammond, SK; et al. (1995) Historical cohort study of spontaneous
11 abortion among fabrication workers in the semiconductor health study: agent-level analysis. *Am*
12 *J Indust Med* 28:751-769.
13
14 Swartout, JC; Price, PS; Dourson, ML; et al. (1998) A probabilistic framework for the reference
15 dose. *Risk Anal* 18(3):271-282.
16
17 Szybalski, W. (1958) Special microbiological system. II. Observations on chemical mutagenesis
18 in microorganisms. *Ann NY Acad. Sci* 76:475-489.
19
20 Tarasenko, NY; Kasparov, AA; Strongina, OM. (1972) The effect of boric acid on the
21 reproductive function of the male organism. *Gig Tr Prof Zabol* 16(11):13-16. (Cited in Whorton
22 et al., 1994b)
23
24 Taylor, M. (1997) Letter to M. Dourson, TERA, Cincinnati, OH. August 28.
25
26 Treinen, KA; Chapin, RE. (1991) Development of testicular lesions in F344 rats after treatment
27 with boric acid. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 107:325-335.
28
29 Ury, HK. (1966) Interim Report on the 1963 Respiratory Disease Survey at Boron, CA. Air
30 Pollution Medical Studies Unit, Bureau of Chronic Diseases, California State Dept. of Public
31 Health. (Cited in ACGIH, 1991)
32
33 U.S. Borax Research Corp. (1963) MRID No. 00068026; HED Doc. No. 009301. Available
34 from EPA. Write to FOI, EPA, Washington, DC. 20460.
35
36 U.S. Borax Research Corp. (1966) MRID No. 00005622, 00068021, 00068881; HED Doc. No.
37 009301. Available from EPA. Write to FOI, EPA, Washington, DC. 20460.
38
39 U.S. Borax Research Corp. (1967) MRID No. 00005623, 005624; HED Doc. No. 009301.
40 Available from EPA. Write to FOI, EPA, Washington, DC. 20460.
41
42 U.S. Borax. (2000) UCI Boric Acid Clearance Study Reports and Associated Data: Rat and
43 Human Studies, April 4, 2000.
44

1 U.S. EPA. (1980) Guidelines and Methodology Used in the Preparation of Health Effect
2 Assessment Chapters of the Consent Decree Water Criteria Documents. Federal Register.
3 45(231):79347-79357.
4
5 U.S. EPA. (1986a) Guidelines for carcinogen risk assessment. Federal Register
6 51(185):33992-34003.
7
8 U.S. EPA. (1986b) Guidelines for the health risk assessment of chemical mixtures. Federal
9 Register 51(185):34014-34025.
10
11 U.S. EPA. (1986c) Guidelines for mutagenicity risk assessment. Federal Register
12 51(185):34006-34012.
13
14 U.S. EPA. (1987) Health Effects Assessment for Boron and Compounds. Prepared by the Office
15 of Health and Environmental Assessment, Environmental Criteria and Assessment Office,
16 Cincinnati, OH for the Office of Solid Waste and Emergency Response, Washington, DC. Final
17 Draft.
18
19 U.S. EPA. (1988) Recommendations for and documentation of biological values for use in risk
20 assessment. EPA 600/6-87/008, NTIS PB88-179874/AS, February 1988.
21
22 U.S. EPA. (1991) Guidelines for developmental toxicity risk assessment. Federal Register
23 56(234):63798-63826.
24
25 U.S. EPA. (1994a) Interim policy for particle size and limit concentration issues in inhalation
26 toxicity: notice of availability. Federal Register 59(206):53799.
27
28 U.S. EPA. (1994b) Methods for derivation of inhalation reference concentrations and application
29 of inhalation dosimetry. EPA/600/8-90/066F.
30
31 U.S. EPA. (1994c) Peer review and peer involvement at the U.S. Environmental Protection
32 Agency. Signed by the U.S. EPA Administrator Carol M. Browner, dated June 7, 1994.
33
34 U.S. EPA. (1995a) Proposed guidelines for neurotoxicity risk assessment. Federal Register
35 60(192):52032-52056.
36
37 U.S. EPA. (1995b) Use of the benchmark dose approach in health risk assessment.
38 EPA/630/R-94/007.
39
40 U.S. EPA. (1996a) Proposed guidelines for carcinogen risk assessment. Federal Register
41 61(79):17960-18011.
42
43 U.S. EPA. (1996b) Reproductive toxicity risk assessment guidelines. Federal Register
44 61(212):56274-56322.
45

1 U.S. EPA. (1997) Exposure Factors Handbook Volume I: General Factors. Office of Research
2 and Development, Washington, DC. EPA/600/P-95/002Fa.
3
4 U.S. EPA. (1998) Science policy council handbook: peer review. Prepared by the Office of
5 Science Policy, Office of Research and Development, Washington, DC. EPA 100-B-98-001.
6
7 U.S. EPA. (2001) Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS). Online. Office of Research and
8 Development, National Center for Environmental Assessment, Washington, DC.
9
10 Usuda, K; Kono, K; Orita, Y; et al. (1998) Serum and urinary boron levels in rats after single
11 administration of sodium tetraborate. Arch Toxicol 72:468-474.
12
13 Vanderpool, RA; Hof, D; Johnson, PE. (1994) Use of inductively coupled plasma-mass
14 spectrometry in boron-10 stable isotope experiments with plants, rats, and humans. Environ
15 Health Perspect 102(Suppl 7):13-20.
16
17 Vaziri, ND; Oveisi, F; Culver, BD; Pahl, MV; Andersen, ME; Strong, PL; Murray, FJ. (2001)
18 The effect of pregnancy on renal clearance of boron in rats given boric acid orally. Toxicol Sci
19 60(2):257-263.
20
21 Vignec, AJ; Ellis, R. (1954) Inabsorbability of boric acid in infant powder. Am J Dis Child
22 88:72-80.
23
24 Weeth, HJ; Speth, CF; Hanks, DR. (1981) Boron content of plasma and urine as indicators of
25 boron intake in cattle. Am J Vet Res 42(3):474-477.
26
27 Wegman, DH; Eisen, EA; Hu, X; et al. (1994) Acute and chronic respiratory effects of sodium
28 borate particulate exposures. Environ Health Perspect 102(Suppl 7):119-128.
29
30 Weir, RJ; Fisher, RS. (1972) Toxicologic studies on borax and boric acid. Toxicol Appl
31 Pharmacol 23:351-364.
32
33 WHO (World Health Organization). (1994) Environmental Health Criteria 170: Assessing
34 human health risks of chemicals: derivation of guidance values for health-based exposure limits,
35 Geneva, Switzerland.
36
37 WHO (World Health Organization). (1998a) Environmental Health Criteria 204: Boron.
38 International Programme on Chemical Safety, Geneva, Switzerland. ISBN 92 4 157204 3.
39
40 WHO (World Health Organization). (1998b) Guidelines for Drinking Water Quality, Geneva,
41 Switzerland. ISBN 92 4 1545143.
42
43 Whorton, D; Haas, J; Trent, L. (1992) Reproductive Effects of Inorganic Borates on Male
44 Employees: Birth Rate Assessment Report. Prepared for United States Borax & Chemical
45 Corporation. Document No. 6966001.

- 1 Whorton, D; Haas, J; Trent, L. (1994a) Reproductive effects of inorganic borates on male
2 employees: birth rate assessment. *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 7):129-131.
3
- 4 Whorton, MD; Haas, JL; Trent, L; Wong, O. (1994b) Reproductive effects of sodium borates on
5 male employees: birth rate assessment. *Occup Environ Med* 51:761-767.
6
- 7 Wilding, JL; Smith, WJ; Yevich, P; et al. (1959) The toxicity of boron oxide. *Am Ind Hyg*
8 *Assoc J* 20:284-289.
9
- 10 Woods, WG. (1994) An introduction to boron: history, sources, uses, and chemistry. *Environ*
11 *Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 7):5-11.

1 appropriate precursor) in the clearest dose-response relationship. If not, what other study (or
2 studies) should be chosen and why?
3

4 **B. Comment** All reviewers agreed that the studies chosen were the most appropriate.
5
6

7 **General Question** Studies included in the RfD and RfC under the heading
8 "Supporting/Additional Studies" are meant to lend scientific justification for the designation of
9 critical effect by including any relevant pathogenesis in humans, any applicable mechanistic
10 information, any evidence corroborative of the critical effect, or to establish the
11 comprehensiveness of the data base with respect to various endpoints (such as
12 reproductive/developmental toxicity studies). Should other studies be included under the
13 "Supporting/Additional" category? Should some studies be removed?
14

15 **C. Comment** All reviewers agreed with what appeared in the document. One reviewer
16 commented that no studies needed to be removed.
17
18

19 **General Question** For the noncancer assessments, are there other data that should be considered
20 in developing the uncertainty factors or the modifying factor? Do you consider that the data
21 support use of different (default) values than those proposed?
22

23 **D. Comment** Two reviewers agreed that there was no reason to support use of uncertainty
24 factors other than those proposed in the document but one of these reviewers questions what the
25 Agency is going to do about the FQPA. One reviewer objected to the write up of the
26 pharmacokinetic section of the document and did not think that the write up of that section
27 supported the reduced uncertainty factor for interspecies variation. This reviewer suggested a
28 revision to the pharmacokinetic section.
29

30 **Response to Comment** The comments in response to this question are addressed in the
31 following Boron Specific Questions. (Question #4)
32
33

34 **General Question** Do the confidence statements and weight-of-evidence statements present a
35 clear rationale and accurately reflect the utility of the studies chosen, the relevancy of the effects
36 (cancer and noncancer) to humans, and the comprehensiveness of the data base? Do these
37 statements make sufficiently apparent all the underlying assumptions and limitations of these
38 assessments? If not, what needs to be added?
39

40 **E. Comments** All reviewers agreed with the confidence statements.
41
42

1 **(2) Comments on Boron Specific Questions**
2

3 **Question 1** Do you agree with the developmental effect, decreased fetal body weight in rats, as
4 being the most appropriate critical effect? If not, why not?
5

6 **Comments** All three external reviewers agreed that decreased fetal body weight in rats
7 was the critical effect.
8
9

10 **Question 2** Do you agree that in light of new developmental data in three species (rats, mice and
11 rabbits) that use of the dog study (Weir and Fisher, 1972) for development of an RfD is
12 unacceptable based on the low number of animals used, the testicular atrophy noted in the control
13 animals and the NOAEL and the LOAEL were taken from two different studies of different
14 duration?
15

16 **Comments** All three reviewers agreed that the dog study should not be used for
17 development of an RfD for the reasons stated in the text and the new developmental data should
18 be used.
19
20

21 **Question 3** Do you agree that use of the benchmark dose (Allen et al., 1996) is appropriate for
22 use in calculating an RfD based on developmental toxicity?
23

24 **Comments** All three reviewers agreed that the use of the benchmark dose from Allen et
25 al. (1996) was appropriate for calculating the RfD. One reviewer also added that proper statistical
26 methods were applied.
27
28

29 **Question 4** Do you agree with the use of an other than default uncertainty factor for inter-
30 species extrapolation based on the reasons given in the Toxicological Review? If not, what do
31 you think it should be and why? Do you agree with the default uncertainty factor chosen for
32 intra-species extrapolation? If not, what do you think is appropriate and why?
33

34 **Comments** Two reviewers agree with the less than default uncertainty factor for
35 interspecies extrapolation. Although one of these two reviewers had a question about how the
36 agency was going to handle additional 10x uncertainty factor for the (FQPA) Food Quality
37 Protection Act. A third reviewer questioned the write up of the physiologically based
38 pharmacokinetic section. This reviewer recommended a rewrite of the pharmacokinetic section
39 especially the Excretion and Elimination Section with more data added. This reviewer could not
40 support the proposed reduced uncertainty factor for interspecies extrapolation without a rewrite
41 of the excretion and elimination section showing the data.
42

43 **Response to Comment** At this time the agency has not come to agreement on the 10x
44 uncertainty factor for the FQPA. Based on the high confidence of the toxicity data base, the
45 assessment for boron and that the critical effect is decreased fetal body weight (developmental

1 toxicity) in the most sensitive species, the author does not think that an extra 10x uncertainty
2 factor is needed to protect for children's risk to boron. Parts of the Toxicokinetic section
3 including Section 3.2 (Distribution) were revised to include more information on the tissues
4 examined and relative amounts of boron in those tissues. More information was included
5 concerning volumes of distribution in a human study and a rat study. Section 3.4 (Elimination
6 and excretion) was completely rewritten to include a comparison between animals and humans
7 for excretion and elimination in the urine and blood. A new pharmacokinetic section was added
8 to emphasize the similarities between animals and humans to support the reduction of the
9 interspecies uncertainty factor.

10
11
12 **Question 5** For the RfC, do you agree with the NOT VERIFIABLE status that indicates the data
13 do not meet the minimum requirements according to the current Agency methods document for
14 Inhalation Reference Doses? If not, what effect and data would you use to develop an RfC?
15

16 **Comments** All three reviewers agree that the inhalation data are sparse and insufficient
17 to determine an RfC.
18
19

20 **Question 6** Do you agree with the Cancer Classification of Group D using the old guidelines,
21 and under the new proposed guidelines that data are insufficient for evaluation of the human
22 carcinogenic potential for boron?
23

24 **Comments** All three reviewers agreed with the cancer classification under current
25 guidelines and new proposed guidelines.
26
27

28 **Question 7** Do you agree with the confidence statements on the RfD? (High confidence in the
29 study, high confidence in the data base and high confidence in the RfD). If you do not agree,
30 what would you change it to and why?
31

32 **Comments** All three reviewers agree with the high confidence in the study, data base
33 and in the RfD.
34

35 Since the Toxicological Review and IRIS Summary Sheets were externally reviewed new
36 pharmacokinetic data on renal clearance of boric acid in rats and humans were received by EPA.
37 The new data were incorporated into the Toxicological Review and used to derive a data derived
38 uncertainty factor for use in estimating the Reference Dose for Boron. The additional
39 information added to the Toxicological Review and RfD Summary Sheets were internally and
40 externally reviewed. The following questions were posed as a charge to both the internal and
41 external reviewers for the additions of pharmacokinetic data.
42

1 **Question:** Are the new data from pharmacokinetic experiments from U. S. Borax adequately
2 presented in sections 3.4 and 3.5 in the Toxicological Review? If not how would you
3 recommend that the data be presented?
4

5 **Comments:** Two reviewers agreed that the data were adequately presented. One of these two
6 gave specific suggestions as to some changes that could help the understanding of the new data
7 presented. A third reviewer felt that the data was inadequately presented. Specific suggestions
8 for incorporation of additional data and rearranging of data presented were given.
9

10 **Response:** Additional information about fractional excretion of boron (ratio of boron clearance
11 to creatinine clearance) and it's relationship to tubular reabsorption and tubular secretion was
12 added to the document. Additional information was added to the write up on the human study
13 concerning the dietary summaries that were taken but were not used and why this was the case.
14 Suggestions made about presenting the human data first were not done because it involved a
15 major change in the document and for this data it was felt that it was not necessary because the
16 uncertainty factor extrapolates from the animal data to the human data so it seems a logical
17 progression to present the animal data first in this particular section.
18

19 **Question:** Do you think that the new pharmacokinetic data on clearance of boron in rats and
20 humans from U. S. Borax should be used for derivation of an uncertainty factor for boron instead
21 of a default Uncertainty Factor?
22

23 **Comments:** All three reviewers agreed that the new pharmacokinetic data on clearance of boron
24 in rats and humans should be used for derivation of an uncertainty factor instead of a default
25 factor. Comments included statements that EPA should always attempt to use real data instead
26 of default factors and a statement that this use of clearance data is a significant step forward in
27 the general EPA methodology for deriving uncertainty.
28

29 **Question:** Do you agree with the current Uncertainty Factor using the data-derived method as it
30 is presented in the Toxicological Review and RfD Summary sheet?
31

32 **Comments:** All three reviewers agreed with the current Uncertainty Factor using the data-
33 derived method as it was presented based on clearance data. One reviewer commented that it is
34 a reasonable but conservative approach.

1 **Comments:** All three reviewers agreed with the current Uncertainty Factor using the data-
2 derived method as it was presented based on clearance data. One reviewer commented that it is
3 a reasonable but conservative approach.
4

5 **General Comments**

6
7 Specific comments were made about confusion clarity over description of the empirical
8 distribution function and toxicokinetic adjustment factor.
9

10 **Response to Specific Comments : Some of these comments and the comments received by**
11 **the public caused EPA to change the way boron uncertainty factor was derived.**
12

13 14 **SUMMARY OF PUBLIC COMMENTS RECEIVED BY APRIL 30, 2001**

- 15
16 • Disagreement with the use of the data derived aggregate toxicokinetic dose-adjustment
17 factor.
18
- 19 • Based on the data presented the sample sizes in the rat and human studies are not large
20 enough to define the distribution of boron clearance in either exposed rats or pregnant
21 women. However the available data are good enough for conducting a central tendency
22 estimate. (Concern with the validity of interpretation and use of the distribution of the
23 data especially the decision to compare the 5th percentile clearance rates between humans
24 and rats)
25
- 26 • Enough information exists regarding variation in Glomerular filtration Rates in pregnant
27 women, GFR is directly related to the renal clearance function, and this may be a good
28 way to estimate intra- human variation in boron clearance.
29
- 30 • Wrong urine collection used (24 hrs instead of 2 hrs). It was felt that the 2 hour data was
31 more appropriate because the sample was taken while in the clinic.
32
- 33 • The BMDL should be adjusted to account for the dose of boron received in the diet as
34 well as by gavage.
35
- 36 • No discussion of the concept of the Chemical Specific Adjustment Factors or IPCS
37 (2001) guidelines
38
39

40 **RESPONSE TO PUBLIC COMMENTS**

- 41
42 • Concern over the intraspecies kinetic adjustment factor, caused EPA to change the way
43 that the intra human kinetic adjustment factor was derived.
44

- 1 • EPA used the 2 hour urine clearance data instead of the 24 hour data although, it made
2 little difference.
3
- 4 • A reference to Chemical Specific Adjustment factors was added to the document.
5
- 6 • EPA contacted Purina company to determine the amount of boron in the rat chow that
7 was used in the Heindel and Price studies and then adjusted the doses in the Heindel and
8 Price studies to include that amount of boron. This data was then used to recalculate the
9 BMDL using the agency Benchmark dose software.

APPENDIX B. BENCHMARK DOSE FOR RfD

A. COMPUTATIONAL MODELS - CONTINUOUS DATA

The continuous power model was fit by Allen et al. (1996) to the data by the maximum likelihood method. The model is expressed as:

$$m(d) = \alpha - \beta \times d^{\gamma},$$

where $m(d)$ is the average litter mean at dose d (expressed in mg/kg-day) and α , β and γ are the parameters to be estimated.

B. DATA

Dose of Boric Acid (mg/kg-day)	Fetal Weight (litter mean \pm std dev, in g)	
	Heindel et al., 1992	Price et al., 1996a, 1994
0	3.70 \pm 0.32	3.61 \pm 0.24
19		3.56 \pm 0.23
36		3.53 \pm 0.28
55		3.50 \pm 0.38
76		3.38 \pm 0.26
78	3.45 \pm 0.25	
143		3.16 \pm 0.31
163	3.21 \pm 0.26	
330	2.34 \pm 0.25	

C. MODEL FIT

The model was examined for fit to the data by an F test that compared the lack of model fit to an estimate of pure error. A likelihood ratio test was performed to determine if a single function could adequately describe the dose-response in both the Heindel et al. (1992) and Price et al. (1996a, 1994) studies.

D. RESULTS

Study	Significant Trend? ^a	Max LL ^b	Goodness-of-fit p-value ^c	Dose corresponding to BMR ^d	
				MLE ^e (mg/kg-day)	BMDL ^f (mg/kg-day)
Heindel et al., 1992	Yes	141.74	0.24	80	56
Price et al., 1996a, 1994	Yes	215.87	0.89	68	47
Combined	--	353.43	0.58	78	59

^a Tested for trend by Mantel-Haenszel trend test. A significant trend corresponds to a p-value less than 0.05. Combined study results were not tested for trend.

^b Maximum value of the log-likelihoods of the models fit to the data, ignoring constant terms not related to parameter estimates. The Max LL for the studies combined is not significantly different (p=0.01) from the sum of the Max LL values for the studies individually, indicating that the data are consistent with a single dose-response curve.

^c Significant fit of the model to the data is indicated by p-value > 0.05

^d BMR = benchmark response, in this case a 5% decrease in mean fetal weight per litter

^e MLE = maximum likelihood estimate of dose corresponding to BMR

^f BMDL = benchmark dose, the 95% lower confidence limit on the MLE

E. DISCUSSION

Results of the likelihood ratio test showed that data from the two studies are consistent with a common dose-response curve. The BMDL of 59 mg/kg-day boric acid (10.3 mg B/kg-day) obtained from the combined data is used for calculation of the RfD. This BMDL is based on combined results of two similarly designed studies conducted in the same laboratory. The BMDL selected is not much less than the lowest dose tested (78 mg/kg-day, 13 mg B/kg-day) in Heindel et al. (1992) which was a LOAEL, and is very close to the NOAEL of 55 mg/kg-day (9.6 mg B/kg-day) (Price et al., 1994).

F. U.S. EPA BENCHMARK DOSE SOFTWARE

The data from the studies of Heindel et al. (1992) and Price et al. (1996a, 1994) were adjusted to include the amount of boron in the diet (10.6 µgB/g of Purina Rat Chow) as well as gavage amounts of boric acid in these two studies. These data were used to estimate a benchmark dose using the Agency Draft Benchmark Dose Software Revision 2.1 Power Model. The BMDL obtained using agency software and adding the boron in the diet to the doses of boric acid was 58.27 mg/kg-day boric acid. The following output shows that these results are similar to the benchmark dose from Allen et al. (1996) where the BMDI was 59 mg/kg-day boric acid.

1 **BMDS MODEL RUN**

2
3 The form of the response function is:

4
5 $Y[\text{dose}] = \text{control} + \text{slope} * \text{dose}^{\text{power}}$

6
7 Dependent variable = MEAN

8 Independent variable = COLUMN1

9 rho is set to 0

10 The power is restricted to be greater than or equal to 1

11 A constant variance model is fit

12
13 Total number of dose groups = 10

14 Total number of records with missing values = 0

15 Maximum number of iterations = 250

16 Relative Function Convergence has been set to: 1e-008

17 Parameter Convergence has been set to: 1e-008

18
19
20 Default Initial Parameter Values

21 alpha = 0.0794435
22 rho = 0 Specified
23 control = 2.34
24 slope = 1.40018
25 power = -0.0721342

26
27
28 Asymptotic Correlation Matrix of Parameter Estimates

29
30

	alpha	rho	control	slope	power
alpha	1	-1	0.061	-0.12	-0.13
rho	-1	1	-0.061	0.12	0.13
control	0.061	-0.061	1	-0.77	-0.74
slope	-0.12	0.12	-0.77	1	1
power	-0.13	0.13	-0.74	1	1

31
32
33
34
35
36

37
38 Parameter Estimates

39

Variable	Estimate	Std. Err.
alpha	0.0787778	0.0727159
rho	0	0.760592
control	3.62476	0.0314803
slope	-0.000605596	0.000471905
power	1.31816	0.133953

40
41
42
43
44
45

Table of Data and Estimated Values of Interest

	<u>Dose</u>	<u>N</u>	<u>Obs Mean</u>	<u>Obs Std Dev</u>	<u>Est Mean</u>	<u>Est Std Dev</u>	<u>Chi^2 Res.</u>
6	1.059	29	3.7	0.32	3.62	0.281	0.27
7	1.061	26	3.61	0.24	3.62	0.281	-0.0502
8	20.06	29	3.56	0.23	3.59	0.281	-0.118
9	37.06	27	3.53	0.28	3.55	0.281	-0.0852
10	56.06	29	3.5	0.38	3.5	0.281	-0.00898
11	77.06	29	3.38	0.26	3.44	0.281	-0.21
12	79.06	28	3.45	0.25	3.43	0.281	0.0625
13	144.1	27	3.16	0.31	3.2	0.281	-0.145
14	164.1	29	3.21	0.26	3.12	0.281	0.316
15	331.1	28	2.34	0.25	2.35	0.281	-0.0523

Model Descriptions for Likelihoods Calculated

- Model A1: $Y_{ij} = \mu(i) + e(ij)$
 $\text{Var}\{e(ij)\} = \sigma^2$
- Model A2: $Y_{ij} = \mu(i) + e(ij)$
 $\text{Var}\{e(ij)\} = \sigma(i)^2$
- Model R: $Y_i = \mu + e(i)$
 $\text{Var}\{e(i)\} = \sigma^2$

Likelihoods of Interest

Model	Log(likelihood)	DF	AIC
A1	220.936705	11	-419.873409
A2	227.175202	20	-414.350404
fitted	216.527938	4	-425.055877
R	76.318996	2	-148.637992

- Test 1: Does response and/or variances differ among dose levels (A2 vs. R)
- Test 2: Are variances homogeneous (A1 vs A2)
- Test 3: Does the model for the mean fit (A1 vs. fitted)

1 Tests of Interest

2

3 Test	-2*log(Likelihood Ratio)	df	p-value
4 Test 1	301.712	18	<.00001
5 Test 2	12.477	9	0.1877
6 Test 3	8.81753	7	0.266

7

8

9 The p-value for Test 1 is less than 0.05. There appears to be a difference between response
10 and/or variances among the dose levels. It seems appropriate to model the data.

11

12 The p-value for Test 2 is greater than .05. A homogeneous variance model appears to be
13 appropriate here.

14

15 The p-value for Test 3 is greater than .05. The model chosen appears to adequately describe the
16 data.

17

18

19 **Benchmark Dose Computation**

20 Specified effect = 0.05

21

22 Risk Type = Relative risk

23

24 Confidence level = 0.95

25

26 BMD = 75.5829

27

28 BMDL = 58.2743

29

30

31 **CITATIONS FOR BENCHMARK DOSE**

32

33 Allen, BC; Strong, PL; Price, CJ; Hubbard, SA; Datson, G.P. (1996) Benchmark dose analysis of
34 developmental toxicity in rats exposed to boric acid. Fund Appl Toxicol 32:194-204.

35

36 Heindel, JJ; Price, CJ; Field, EA; et al. (1992) Developmental toxicity of boric acid in mice and
37 rats. Fund Appl Toxicol 18:266-277.

38

39 Price, CJ; Marr, MC; Myers, CB. (1994) Determination of the No-Observable-Adverse-Effect
40 Level (NOAEL) for Developmental Toxicity in Sprague-Dawley (CD) Rats Exposed to Boric
41 Acid in Feed on Gestational Days 0 to 20, and Evaluation of Postnatal Recovery through
42 Postnatal Day 21. Final report. (3 volumes, 716 pp). RTI Identification No. 65C-5657-200.
43 Research Triangle Institute, Center for Life Science, Research Triangle Park, NC.

44

1 Price, CJ; Strong, PL; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Murray, FJ. (1996a.) Developmental toxicity
2 NOAEL and postnatal recovery in rats fed boric acid during gestation. Fund Appl Toxicol
3 32:179-193.

Boron and Compounds
CASRN 7440-42-8
00/00/00

0410

Boron and Compounds; CASRN 7440-42-8; 00/00/00

Health assessment information on a chemical substance is included in IRIS only after a comprehensive review of chronic toxicity data by U.S. EPA health scientists from several Program Offices, Regional Offices, and the Office of Research and Development. The summaries presented in Sections I and II represent a consensus reached in the review process. Background information and explanations of the methods used to derive the values given in IRIS are provided in the Background Documents.

STATUS OF DATA FOR Boron and Compounds

File First On-Line 10/01/89

Category (section)	Status	Last Revised
Oral RfD Assessment (I.A.)	on-line	00/00/00
Inhalation RfC Assessment (I.B.)	on-line	00/00/00
Carcinogenicity Assessment (II.)	on-line	00/00/00

I. CHRONIC HEALTH HAZARD ASSESSMENTS FOR NONCARCINOGENIC EFFECTS

I.A. REFERENCE DOSE FOR CHRONIC ORAL EXPOSURE (RfD)

Boron and Compounds
CASRN -- 7440-42-8
Last Revised -- 00/00/00

The oral Reference Dose (RfD) is based on the assumption that thresholds exist for certain toxic effects such as cellular necrosis. It is expressed in units of mg/kg-day. In general, the RfD is an estimate (with uncertainty spanning perhaps an order of magnitude) of a daily exposure to the human population (including sensitive subgroups) that is likely to be without an appreciable risk of deleterious effects during a lifetime. Please refer to the Background

1 Document for an elaboration of these concepts. RfDs can also be derived for the
2 noncarcinogenic health effects of substances that are also carcinogens. Therefore, it is essential
3 to refer to other sources of information concerning the carcinogenicity of this substance. If the
4 U.S. EPA has evaluated this substance for potential human carcinogenicity, a summary of that
5 evaluation will be contained in Section II of this file.
6

7 Chronic toxicity in dogs (Weir and Fisher, 1972) was used previously to develop an RfD
8 for boron (10/01/89). Recently, developmental data in three species (rats, mice and rabbits)
9 have become available. Based on the new developmental data and several limitations of the dog
10 studies (Section I.A.I), decreased fetal body weight in rats is recommended as the critical effect
11 for development of an RfD.
12

13 I.A.1. ORAL RfD SUMMARY

14 Critical Effect	15 Experimental Doses*	16 UF	17 MF	18 RfD

19 --				
20 Decreased fetal weight (developmental)	BMDL: 10.3 mg/kg-day	62	1	2E-1 mg/kg-day
21 Rat dietary gestational 22 exposure to boric acid				
23 Price et al., 1996a, 1994, 24 1990; Heindel et al., 1992	NOAEL: 9.6 mg B/kg-day LOAEL: 13.3 mg B/kg-day			

25 *Conversion Factors and Assumptions -- Doses in mg boric acid were converted to mg boron by
26 multiplying by the ratio of the formula weight of boron to the molecular weight of boric acid
27 (10.81/61.84 = 0.1748). Similarly, doses in mg borax were converted to mg boron by
28 multiplying by the ratio of the formula weight of boron to the molecular weight of borax (4 x
29 10.81/381.3 = 0.1134). The UF is data-derived and consists of variability and uncertainty factors.
30 The UF is rounded to 62 from 61.9.
31
32
33
34

35 I.A.2. PRINCIPAL AND SUPPORTING STUDIES (ORAL RfD)

36 Heindel, JJ; Price, CJ; Field, EA; et al. (1992) Developmental toxicity of boric acid in mice and
37 rats. Fund Appl Toxicol 18:266-277.
38

39 Price, CJ; Field, EA; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Morrissey, RE; Schwetz, BA. (1990) Final report
40 on the Developmental Toxicity of Boric Acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in Sprague Dawley Rats.
41 NTP Report No. 90-105 (and Report Supplement No. 90-105A). National Toxicology Program,
42 U.S. DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle Park, NC, May 1.
43
44
45

1 Price, CJ; Marr, MC; Myers, CB. (1994) Determination of the No-Observable-Adverse-Effect
2 Level (NOAEL) for Developmental Toxicity in Sprague-Dawley (CD) Rats Exposed to Boric
3 Acid in Feed on Gestational Days 0 to 20, and Evaluation of Postnatal Recovery through
4 Postnatal Day 21. Final report. (3 volumes, 716 pp). RTI Identification No. 65C-5657-200.
5 Research Triangle Institute, Center for Life Science, Research Triangle Park, NC.

6
7 Price, CJ; Strong, PL; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Murray, FJ. (1996a.) Developmental toxicity
8 NOAEL and postnatal recovery in rats fed boric acid during gestation. *Fund Appl Toxicol*
9 32:179-193.

10
11 Developmental (decreased fetal weights) effects are considered the critical effect. The
12 basis for calculating the RfD is the BMD05 of 10.3 mg boron/kg-day calculated from the
13 developmental effects reported by Heindel et al. (1992; Price et al., 1990) and Price et al. (1996a,
14 1994).

15
16 Heindel et al. (1992; Price et al., 1990) treated timed-mated Sprague-Dawley rats
17 (29/group) with a diet containing 0, 0.1, 0.2 or 0.4% boric acid from gestation day (gd) 0-20.
18 The investigators estimated that the diet provided 0, 78, 163 or 330 mg boric acid/kg-day (0,
19 13.6, 28.5 or 57.7 mg B/kg-day). Additional groups of 14 rats each received boric acid at 0 or
20 0.8% in the diet (539 mg/kg-day or 94.2 mg B/kg-day) on gd 6 through 15 only. Exposure to
21 0.8% was limited to the period of major organogenesis in order to reduce the preimplantation
22 loss and early embryoletality indicated by the range-finding study, and hence provide more
23 opportunity for teratogenesis. (The range-finding study found that exposure to 0.8% on gd 0-20
24 resulted in a decreased pregnancy rate [75% as compared with 87.5% in controls] and in greatly
25 increased resorption rate per litter [76% as compared with 7% in controls]). Food and water
26 intake, and body weights, as well as clinical signs of toxicity, were monitored throughout
27 pregnancy. On day 20 of gestation, the animals were sacrificed and the liver, kidneys and intact
28 uteri were weighed, and corpora lutea were counted. Maternal kidneys, selected randomly (10
29 dams/group), were processed for microscopic evaluation. Live fetuses were dissected from the
30 uterus, weighed and examined for external, visceral and skeletal malformations. Statistical
31 significance was established at $p < 0.05$. There was no maternal mortality during treatment. Food
32 intake increased 5-7% relative to that of controls on gestation days 12 through 20 at 0.2 and
33 0.4%; water intake was not significantly altered by administration of boric acid (data not shown).
34 At 0.8%, water and food intake decreased on days 6-9 and increased on days 15-18, relative to
35 controls. Pregnancy rates ranged between 90 and 100% for all groups of rats and appeared
36 unrelated to treatment. Maternal effects attributed to treatment included a significant and dose-
37 related increase in relative liver and kidney weights at 0.2% or more, a significant increase in
38 absolute kidney weight at 0.8%, and a significant decrease in body-weight gain during treatment
39 at 0.4% or more. Corrected body weight gain (gestational weight gain minus gravid uterine
40 weight) was unaffected except for a significant increase at 0.4%. Examination of maternal
41 kidney sections revealed minimal nephropathy in a few rats (unspecified number), but neither the
42 incidence nor the severity of the changes was dose related.

1 Treatment with 0.8% boric acid (gd 6-15) significantly increased prenatal mortality; this
2 was due to increases in the percentage of resorptions per litter and percentage of late fetal deaths
3 per litter. The number of live fetuses per litter was also significantly decreased at 0.8%.
4 Average fetal body weight (all fetuses or male or female fetuses) per litter was significantly
5 reduced in all treated groups versus controls in a dose-related manner. Mean fetal weights were
6 94, 87, 63 and 46% of the corresponding control means for the 0.1, 0.2, 0.4 and 0.8% dose
7 groups, respectively. The percentage of malformed fetuses per litter and the percentage of litters
8 with at least one malformed fetus were significantly increased at 0.2% or more. Treatment with
9 0.2% or more boric acid also increased the incidence of litters with one or more fetuses with a
10 skeletal malformation. The incidence of litters with one or more pups with a visceral or gross
11 malformation was increased at 0.4 and 0.8%, respectively. The malformations consisted
12 primarily of anomalies of the eyes, the central nervous system, the cardiovascular system, and
13 the axial skeleton. In the 0.4 and 0.8% groups, the most common malformations were enlarged
14 lateral ventricles of the brain and agenesis or shortening of rib XIII. The percentage of fetuses
15 with variations per litter was reduced relative to controls in the 0.1 and 0.2% dosage groups (due
16 primarily to a reduction in the incidence of rudimentary or full ribs at lumbar I), but was
17 significantly increased in the 0.8% group. The variation with the highest incidence among
18 fetuses was wavy ribs. Based on the changes in organ weights, a maternal LOAEL of 0.2%
19 boric acid in the feed (28.5 mg B/kg-day) can be established; the maternal NOAEL is 0.1% or
20 13.6 mg B/kg-day. Based on the decrease in fetal body weight per litter, the level of 0.1% boric
21 acid in the feed (13.6 mg B/kg-day) is a LOAEL; a NOAEL was not defined.
22

23 In a follow-up study, Price et al. (1996a, 1994) administered boric acid in the diet (at 0,
24 0.025, 0.050, 0.075, 0.100 or 0.200%) to timed-mated CD rats, 60 per group, from gd 0-20.
25 Throughout gestation, rats were monitored for body weight, clinical condition, and food and
26 water intake. This experiment was conducted in two phases, and in both phases offspring were
27 evaluated for post-implantation mortality, body weight and morphology (external, visceral and
28 skeletal). Phase I of this experiment was considered the teratology evaluation and was
29 terminated on gd 20 and uterine contents were evaluated. The calculated average dose of boric
30 acid consumed for Phase I dams was 19, 36, 55, 76 and 143 mg/kg-day (3.3, 6.3, 9.6, 13.3 and 25
31 mg B/kg-day). During Phase I, no maternal deaths occurred and no clinical symptoms were
32 associated with boric acid exposure. Maternal body weights did not differ among groups during
33 gestation, but statistically significant trend tests associated with decreased maternal body weight
34 (gd 19 and 20 at sacrifice) and decreased maternal body weight gain (gd 15-18 and gd 0-20)
35 were indicated. In the high-dose group, there was a 10% reduction (statistically significant in the
36 trend test $p < 0.05$) in gravid uterine weight when compared with controls. The authors indicated
37 that the decreasing trend of maternal body weight and weight gain during late gestation reflected
38 reduced gravid uterine weight. Corrected maternal weight gain (maternal gestational weight
39 gain minus gravid uterine weight) was not affected. Maternal food intake was only minimally
40 affected at the highest dose and only during the first 3 days of dosing. Water intake was higher
41 in the exposed groups after gd 15. The number of ovarian corpora lutea and uterine implantation
42 sites, and the percent preimplantation loss were not affected by boric acid exposure.
43

44 Offspring body weights were significantly decreased in the 13.3 and 25 mg B/kg-day
45 dose groups on gd 20. The body weight of the low- to high-dose groups, respectively, were 99,

1 98, 97, 94 and 88% of control weight. There was no evidence of a treatment-related increase in
2 the incidence of external or visceral malformations or variations when considered collectively or
3 individually. On gd 20, skeletal malformations or variations considered collectively showed a
4 significant increased percentage of fetuses with skeletal malformations per litter. Taken
5 individually, dose-related response increases were observed for short rib XIII, considered a
6 malformation in this study, and wavy rib or wavy rib cartilage, considered a variation. Statistical
7 analyses indicated that the incidence of short rib XIII and wavy rib were both increased in the
8 13.3 and 25 mg B/kg-day dose groups relative to controls. A significant trend test ($p < 0.05$) was
9 found for decrease in rudimentary extra rib on lumbar I, classified as a variation. Only the high-
10 dose group had a biologically relevant, but not statistically significant, decrease in this variation.
11 The LOAEL for Phase I of this study was considered to be 0.1% boric acid (13.3 mg B/kg-day)
12 based on decreased fetal body weight. The NOAEL for Phase I of this study was considered to
13 be 0.075% boric acid (9.6 mg B/kg-day).

14
15 In Phase II, dams were allowed to deliver and rear their litters until postnatal day (pnd)
16 21. The calculated average doses of boric acid consumed for Phase II dams were 19, 37, 56, 74
17 and 145 mg/kg-day (3.2, 6.5, 9.7, 12.9 and 25.3 mg B/kg-day). This phase allowed a follow-up
18 period to determine whether the incidence of skeletal defects in control and exposed pups
19 changed during the first 21 postnatal days. Among live born pups, there was a significant trend
20 test for increased number and percent of dead pups between pnd 0 and 4, but not between pnd 4
21 and 21; this appeared to be due to an increase in early postnatal mortality in the high dose, which
22 did not differ significantly from controls and was within the range of control values for other
23 studies in this laboratory. On pnd 0, the start of Phase II, there were no effects of boric acid on
24 the body weight of offspring (102, 101, 99, 101 and 100% of controls, respectively). There were
25 also no differences through termination on pnd 21; therefore, fetal body weight deficits did not
26 continue into this postnatal period (Phase II). The percentage of pups per litter with short rib
27 XIII was still elevated on pnd 21 in the 0.20% boric acid dose group (25.3 mg B/kg-day), but
28 there was no incidence of wavy rib, and none of the treated or control pups on pnd 21 had an
29 extra rib on lumbar 1. The NOAEL and LOAEL for phase II of this study were 12.9 and 25.3
30 mg B/kg-day, respectively.

31
32 The Institute for Evaluating Health Risks (IEHR) (1997) concluded that there was a
33 consistent correlation between boric acid exposure and the different effects on rib and vertebral
34 development in rats, mice and rabbits (see Additional Studies Section for effects in mice and
35 rabbits). Of these three species, the rat was the most sensitive to low-dose effects. A causal
36 association between exposure to boric acid and the short rib XIII existed when fetuses were
37 examined at late gestation or when pups were examined at pnd 21. The IEHR (1997)
38 concluded that decreased fetal body weight occurred at the same dose or at doses lower than
39 those at which skeletal changes were observed, and agreed that this was the preferred data set for
40 deriving quantitative estimates.

41
42 Several benchmark dose (BMDL) analyses were conducted (Allen et al., 1996) using all
43 relevant endpoints to analyze data from Heindel et al. (1992) and Price et al. (1996a, 1994)
44 studies alone and combined data from the two studies. Changes in fetal weight were analyzed by
45 taking the average fetal weight for each litter with live fetuses. Those averages were considered

1 to represent variations in a continuous variable and a continuous power model was used. A
2 BMDL was defined in terms of a prespecified level of effect, referred to as the benchmark
3 response (BMR) level (Kavlock et al., 1995). For mean fetal weight analysis, the BMDL was
4 defined as the 95% lower bound on the dose corresponding to a 5% decrease in the mean (BMR
5 was 5% decrease). For the continuous power model, F-tests that compared the lack of model fit
6 to an estimate of pure error were employed.

7
8 For all endpoints, the results of the two studies were compared. The dose-response
9 patterns were examined to determine if a single function could adequately describe the responses
10 in both studies. This determination was based on a likelihood ratio test. The maximum log-
11 likelihoods from the models fit to the two studies considered separately were added together; the
12 maximum log-likelihood for the model fit to the combined results was then subtracted from this
13 sum. Twice that difference is distributed approximately as a chi-square random variable (Cox
14 and Lindley, 1974). The degrees of freedom for that chi-square random variable are equal to the
15 number of parameters in the model plus 1. The additional degree of freedom was available
16 because the two control groups were treated as one group in the combined results, which
17 eliminates the need to estimate one of the intra-litter correlation coefficients (for beta-binomial
18 random variables) or variances (for normal random variables) that was estimated when the
19 studies were treated separately. The critical values from the appropriate chi-square distributions
20 (associated with a p-value of 0.01) were compared to the calculated values. When the calculated
21 value was less than the corresponding critical value, the combined results were used to estimate
22 BMDLs; this result indicated that the responses from the two studies were consistent with a
23 single dose-response function. BMDL values calculated with a continuous power model for fetal
24 body weight (litter weight averages) were less than those for all other relevant endpoints. The
25 BMDL based on the combined results of the two studies was 10.3 mg B/kg-day, which was very
26 close to the NOAEL of 9.6 mg B/kg-day from the Price et al. (1996a, 1994) study.

27
28 In addition to the rat studies, the developmental effects of boric acid were also studied in
29 mice and rabbits. Heindel et al. (1994, 1992; Field et al., 1989) identified a NOAEL and
30 LOAEL of 43.3 and 79 mg B/kg-day, respectively, for decreased fetal body weight in mice
31 exposed to boric acid in the feed. Increased resorptions and malformations, especially short rib
32 XIII, were noted at higher doses. Price et al. (1996b, 1991; Heindel et al., 1994) identified a
33 NOAEL and LOAEL of 21.9 and 43.7 mg B/kg-day for developmental effects in rabbits. Frank
34 effects were found at the LOAEL, including high prenatal mortality and increased incidence of
35 malformations, especially cardiovascular defects.

36 37 38 I.A.3. UNCERTAINTY AND MODIFYING FACTORS (ORAL RfD)

39 UF =62

40
41
42 The animal-to-human and sensitive-human uncertainty factors (UF_A and UF_H) are each
43 split into toxicokinetic (kinetic) and toxicodynamic (dynamic) components in order to apply
44 existing rat and human toxicokinetic data to reduce the uncertainty in the boron RfD. The
45 kinetic and dynamic default values for UF_A are given unequal values for the boron assessment,

1 as there is empirical and conceptual support for an uneven default partition. For the class of
2 compounds, such as boron, for which a physiological rate is justified as the sole toxicokinetic
3 scaling variable, the IPCS (2001) approach is adopted, where UF_{AK} and UF_{AD} are assigned
4 default values of 4.0 and 2.5, respectively. This partition is based on an empirical analysis
5 published by Renwick (1993) and an allometric approach presented in §5.1.3 in the
6 Toxicological Review. The kinetic and dynamic defaults for UF_H are assigned equal values of
7 $10^{0.5}$ (3.16).

8
9 The formula for calculating the RfD with this uncertainty factor disaggregation is:

$$RfD = \frac{D_C}{(VF_{AK} \cdot VF_{AD} \cdot VF_{HK} \cdot VF_{HD} \cdot UF_{AK} \cdot UF_{AD} \cdot UF_{HK} \cdot UF_{HD} \cdot UF_X \cdot MF)}$$

10
11
12 where:

- 13
14 D_C is the “critical” dose (NOAEL, LOAEL, BMD) defined in the critical study,
15 VF_{AK} is the interspecies toxicokinetic variability factor (derived from data; default = 1),
16 VF_{AD} is the interspecies toxicodynamic variability factor (derived from data; default =
17 1),
18 VF_{HK} is the interindividual toxicokinetic variability factor (derived from data; default =
19 1),
20 VF_{HD} is the interindividual toxicodynamic variability factor (derived from data; default
21 = 1),
22 UF_{AK} is the interspecies toxicokinetic uncertainty factor (default = 4.0),
23 UF_{AD} is the interspecies toxicodynamic uncertainty factor (default = 2.5),
24 UF_{HK} is the interindividual toxicokinetic uncertainty factor (default = $10^{0.5}$),
25 UF_{HD} is the interindividual toxicodynamic uncertainty factor (default = $10^{0.5}$),
26 UF_X represents all other uncertainty factors ($UF_L \times UF_D \times UF_S = 1$, for boron).
27 MF is the Modifying Factor (= 1 for boron).
28

29 Note that the product of VF_{AK} , UF_{AK} , VF_{AD} , UF_{AD} , VF_{HK} , UF_{HK} , VF_{HD} , UF_{HD} , and UF_X
30 corresponds to the total UF as shown in the RfD Summary Table (I.A.1), and is designated as
31 AF_{TOT} (Total Adjustment Factor). This formula is described further in §5.1.3 of the
32 Toxicological Review.
33

34 Although the toxic effects of boron are manifested in the offspring, the pregnant females
35 (for both humans and test animals) are considered to be the “sensitive subpopulation,” with
36 respect to establishing an equivalent toxic dose across species. Given the near 1st order kinetics
37 of boron, maternal toxicokinetic variability is likely to be an adequate surrogate for the fetal dose
38 variability, although there is some remaining uncertainty in fetal kinetic variability.
39

40 As the rat:human boron clearance ratio is being used essentially as an (inverse) estimator
41 of relative internal dose and subsequently as a scalar of “external dose” (ingested dose rate in
42 mg/kg-day), an additional factor must be considered that ties internal dose to external dose. As
43 there is an assumption of relatively constant intake of boron and the toxic outcome is most likely
44 related to a continuous exposure over an extended critical period (the period of organogenesis

1 during fetal development), the most appropriate estimator for internal dose is the average
2 (steady-state) circulating boron concentration.

3
4 The formula for calculating the interspecies kinetic variability factor is given by
5

$$6 \quad VF_{AK} = \frac{Cl_r \times f_{ah} \times f_{ph}}{Cl_h \times f_{ar} \times f_{pr}}$$

7
8 where the trailing *r* and *h* subscripts stand for pregnant rats and pregnant humans, respectively,
9 *Cl* is mean boron clearance (mL/min-kg), *f_a* is fraction of ingested boron absorbed, and *f_p* is the
10 subsequent fraction distributed in the plasma compartment. The mean boron clearance for
11 pregnant rats and pregnant women is 3.3 and 1.02 mL/min-kg, respectively (U.S. Borax, 2000;
12 Vaziri et al., 2001; Pahl et al., 2001). *f_{ah}* and *f_{ar}* are both 0.95, *f_{ph}* = 0.0911, *f_{pr}* = 0.0723, and
13 *VF_{AK}* = 4.08. *UF_{AK}* is reduced to unity (1.0).
14

15 The interindividual (intrahuman) variability factor is calculated as
16

$$17 \quad VF_{HK} = \frac{GFR_{AVG}}{GFR_{LOW}}$$

18
19 where *GFR_{AVG}* and *GFR_{LOW}* are the mean GFR and “lower bound,” respectively, for the
20 population of healthy pregnant women, averaged across the entire gestational period. The lower
21 bound is taken as the 0.1 percentile of the lognormal distribution of GFR for pregnant women as
22 reported in Dunlop (1981). In this case, a value for *VF_{HK}* is sought that gives 99.9% coverage of
23 the population variability. A relatively large coverage is chosen, as the population at risk is very
24 large and this factor addresses population variability rather than uncertainty (which is addressed
25 by *UF_{HK}*). GFR is used as a surrogate for boron clearance as the available boron clearance data
26 are inadequate for estimating population variability. The lognormal distribution for body-
27 weight-corrected GFR (based on Dunlop, 1981) is characterized by a geometric mean of 2.257
28 mL/min-kg and a geometric standard deviation of 1.160 mL/min-kg. The 0.1 percentile value is
29 1.427 mL/min-kg. The overall mean is 2.281 mL/min-kg. The corresponding *VF_{HK}* value is
30 1.60. As there is remaining uncertainty in the estimation of population variance from Dunlop
31 (1981), uncertainty pertaining to the use of GFR as a surrogate for actual boron clearance, and
32 uncertainty in fetal kinetics, *UF_{HK}* is assigned a value of 1.2, rather than 1.0.
33

34 As there is no data pertaining to boron toxicodynamics, all of the dynamic factors are
35 assigned their default values (*VF_{AD}* = *VF_{HD}* = 1.0, *UF_{AD}* = 2.5, *UF_{HD}* = 3.16). The overall
36 adjustment factor (*AF_{TOT}*) is 61.9 (4.08 x 1.60 x 2.5 x 1.2 x 3.16), which is shown in I.A.1 as the
37 total *UF*. Section 5.1.3 of the Toxicological Review provides a much more detailed description
38 and discussion of the models and use of the toxicokinetic data for deriving these factors.
39

40 *MF* = 1.
41
42

1 **I.A.4. ADDITIONAL STUDIES/COMMENTS (ORAL RfD)**
2

3 The subchronic and chronic toxicity of borax and boric acid was studied in dogs
4 administered these compounds in the diet (Weir and Fisher, 1972; U.S. Borax Research Corp.,
5 1963, 1966, 1967). In the supporting subchronic study, groups of beagle dogs
6 (5/sex/dose/compound) were administered borax (sodium tetraborate decahydrate) or boric acid
7 for 90 days at dietary levels of 17.5, 175 and 1750 ppm boron (male: 0.33, 3.9 and 30.4 mg
8 B/kg-day; female: 0.24, 2.5 and 21.8 mg B/kg-day) and compared with an untreated control
9 group of 5 dogs/sex (Weir and Fisher, 1972; U.S. Borax Research Corp., 1963). A high-dose
10 male dog died as a result of complications of diarrhea on day 68 of the study with severe
11 congestion of the mucosa of the small and large intestines and congestion of the kidneys. No
12 clinical signs of toxicity were evident in the other dogs. The testes were the primary target of
13 boron toxicity. At the high dose, mean testes weight was decreased 44% in males fed borax
14 (9.6g) and 39% in males fed boric acid (10.5 g) compared with controls (17.2 g). Also at this
15 dose, mean testes:body weight ratio (control: 0.2%; borax: 0.1%; boric acid: 0.12%) and mean
16 testes:brain weight ratio (control: 22%; borax: 12%) were significantly reduced. Decreased
17 testes:body weight ratio was also observed in one dog from the mid-dose boric acid group.
18 Microscopic pathology revealed severe testicular atrophy in all high-dose male dogs, with
19 complete degeneration of the spermatogenic epithelium in most cases. No testicular lesions were
20 found in the lower dose groups. Hematological effects were also observed in high-dose dogs.
21 Decreases were found for both hematocrit (15 and 6% for males and females, respectively) and
22 hemoglobin (11% for both males and females) at study termination in borax-treated dogs.
23 Pathological examination revealed accumulation of hemosiderin pigment in the liver, spleen and
24 kidney, indicating breakdown of red blood cells, in males and females treated with borax or
25 boric acid. Other effects in high-dose dogs were decreased thyroid:body weight ratio (control:
26 0.009%; borax: 0.006%; boric acid: 0.006%) and thyroid:brain weight ratio (control: 0.95%;
27 borax: 0.73%) in males; also at the high dose were increases in brain:body weight ratio (borax)
28 and liver:body weight ratios (boric acid) in females and a somewhat increased proportion of
29 solid epithelial nests and minute follicles in the thyroid gland of borax-treated males, lymphoid
30 infiltration and atrophy of the thyroid in boric-acid treated females, and increased width of the
31 zona reticularis (borax males and females, boric acid females) and zona glomerulosa (boric acid
32 females) in the adrenal gland. This study identified a LOAEL for systemic toxicity in dogs of
33 1750 ppm boron (male: 30.4 mg B/kg-day; female: 21.8 mg B/kg-day) and a NOAEL of 175
34 ppm boron (male: 3.9 mg B/kg-day; female: 2.5 mg B/kg-day) following subchronic exposure.
35

36 In the chronic toxicity study, groups of beagle dogs (4/sex/dose/compound) were
37 administered borax or boric acid by dietary admix at concentrations of 0, 58, 117 and 350 ppm
38 boron (0, 1.4, 2.9 and 8.8 mg B/kg-day) for 104 weeks (Weir and Fisher, 1972; U.S. Borax
39 Research Corp., 1966). There was a 52-week interim sacrifice and a 13-week "recovery" period
40 after 104 weeks on test article for some dogs. Control animals (4 male dogs) served as controls
41 for the borax and boric acid dosed animals. One male control dog was sacrificed after 52 weeks,
42 two male control dogs were sacrificed after 104 weeks and one was sacrificed after the 13-week
43 recovery period with 104 weeks of treatment. The one male control dog sacrificed after the
44 13-week recovery period demonstrated testicular atrophy. Sperm samples used for counts and
45 motility testing were taken only on the control and high dosed male dogs prior to the 2-year

1 sacrifice. At a dose level of 8.8 mg B/kg-day in the form of boric acid, one dog sacrificed at 104
2 weeks had testicular atrophy. Two semen evaluations (taken after 24 months treatment) were
3 performed on dogs treated at the highest dose (8.8 mg B/kg-day). Two of two borax treated
4 animals had samples that were azoospermic and had no motility while one of two boric acid
5 treated animals had samples that were azoospermic. The authors reported that there did not
6 appear to be any definitive test article effect on any parameter examined. The study pathologist
7 considered the histopathological findings as being "not compound-induced." Tumors were not
8 reported.

9
10 In a follow-up to this study, groups of beagle dogs (4/sex/dose/compound) were given
11 borax or boric acid in the diet at concentrations of 0 and 1170 ppm boron (0 and 29.2 mg
12 B/kg-day) for up to 38 weeks (Weir and Fisher, 1972; U.S. Borax Research Corp., 1967). New
13 control dogs (4 males) were used for this follow up study. Two were sacrificed at 26 weeks and
14 two at 38 weeks. At the 26-week sacrifice, one of two had spermatogenesis and (5%) atrophy.
15 One was reported normal. At 38 weeks, one had decreased spermatogenesis and the other had
16 testicular atrophy. The test animals were noted throughout the study to have about an 11%
17 decrease in the rate of weight gain when compared with control animals. Interim sacrifice of two
18 animals from each group at 26 weeks revealed severe testicular atrophy and spermatogenic arrest
19 in male dogs treated with either boron compound. Testes weight, testes:body weight ratio and
20 testes:brain weight ratios were all decreased. Effects on other organs were not observed.
21 Exposure was stopped at 38 weeks; at this time, one animal from each group was sacrificed and
22 the remaining animal from each group was placed on the control diet for a 25-day recovery
23 period prior to sacrifice. After the 25-day recovery period, testes weight and testes weight:body
24 weight ratio were similar to controls in both boron-treated males, and microscopic examination
25 revealed the presence of moderately active spermatogenic epithelium in one of these dogs. The
26 researchers suggested that this finding, although based on a single animal, indicates that boron-
27 induced testicular degeneration in dogs may be reversible upon cessation of exposure. When the
28 2-year and 38-week dog studies are considered together, an overall NOAEL and LOAEL for
29 systemic toxicity can be established at 8.8 and 29.2 mg B/kg-day, respectively, based on
30 testicular atrophy and spermatogenic arrest.

31
32 These dog studies were previously used to calculate the RfD for boron (10/01/89). Based
33 on newer developmental data in rats and several limitations in the dog studies, the critical effect
34 is now considered to be decreased fetal body weight in rats. Some limitations of the dog studies
35 include the small number of test animals per dose group (n=4), the use of shared control animals
36 in the borax and boric acid studies so that at most two control animals were sacrificed at any
37 time period, the observation of testicular damage in three of four control animals, and the
38 NOAEL and LOAEL were taken from two different studies of different duration. Also, the
39 study pathologist considered the histopathological findings as being "not compound-induced."
40 Based on the small number of animals and the wide range of background variability among the
41 controls, these studies do not appear to be appropriate at this time for establishment of an RfD.

42
43 Reproductive and systemic toxicity studies have identified the testes as a sensitive target
44 of boron toxicity in rats and mice, although at higher doses than in the dog study (Weir and
45 Fisher, 1972; Seal and Weeth, 1980; NTP, 1987; Fail et al., 1991). The testicular effects that

1 have been reported include reduced organ weight and organ:body weight ratio, atrophy,
2 degeneration of the spermatogenic epithelium, impaired spermatogenesis, reduced fertility and
3 sterility (Weir and Fisher, 1972; Seal and Weeth, 1980; NTP, 1987; Fail et al., 1991; Dixon et
4 al., 1979; Linder et al., 1990; Treinen and Chapin, 1991; Ku et al., 1993).

5
6 Boron is a trace element for which essentiality is suspected but has not been directly
7 proven in humans (Nielsen, 1991, 1992, 1994; NRC, 1989; Hunt, 1994; Mertz, 1993). Because
8 deficiency in humans has not been established, there are no adequate data from which to estimate
9 a human requirement, and no provisional allowance has been established (NRC, 1989).
10 However, boron deprivation experiments with animals and three human clinical studies have
11 yielded some persuasive findings for the hypothesis that boron is nutritionally essential as
12 evidenced by the demonstration that it affects macromineral and cellular metabolism at the
13 membrane level (Nielsen, 1994). A close interaction between boron and calcium has been
14 suggested. This interaction appears to affect similar systems that indirectly affect many
15 variables including modification of hormone action and alteration of cell membrane
16 characteristics (Nielsen et al., 1987; Nielsen, 1991, 1992, 1994). Data from three human studies
17 of potential boron essentiality show that dietary boron can affect bone, brain and kidney
18 variables. The subjects in most of these studies, however, were under some form of nutritional
19 or metabolic stress affecting calcium metabolism, including reduced intake of magnesium or
20 physiologic states associated with increased loss of calcium from bone or the body (e.g.,
21 postmenopausal women).

22
23 Based on these studies in which most subjects who consumed 0.25 mg B/day responded
24 to boron supplementation, Nielsen (1991) concluded that the basal requirement for boron is
25 likely to be greater than 0.25 mg/day. Limited survey data indicate that the average dietary
26 intake of boron by humans is 0.5-3.1 mg-day (7-44 $\mu\text{g}/\text{kg}\text{-day}$) (Nielsen, 1991). Boron has been
27 known since the 1920s to be an essential micronutrient for the growth of all plants. The average
28 U.S. adult male dietary intake of 1.52 ± 0.38 mg B/day (mean \pm standard deviation) (Iyengar et
29 al., 1988) was determined by U.S. FDA Total Diet Study methods. In a more recent study,
30 Anderson et al. (1994) reported an intake of 1.21 ± 0.07 mg B/day for an average diet for 25- to
31 30-year-old males, as determined by U.S. FDA Total Diet Study analyses. Similarly, the average
32 dietary boron intake in Canada is reported to be 1.33 ± 0.13 mg B/day for women (Clarke and
33 Gibson, 1988). Dietary boron consumption in Europe can be higher due to wine consumption
34 (ECETOC, 1994). These and other investigators (Nielsen, 1992) also recognized that greater
35 consumption of fruits, vegetables, nuts and legumes (e.g., vegetarian diets) could raise dietary
36 boron intake.

37 38 39 I.A.5. CONFIDENCE IN THE ORAL RfD

40
41 Study -- High
42 Data Base -- High
43 RfD -- High
44

45 Confidence in the principal developmental studies is high; they are well-designed studies
46 that examined relevant developmental endpoints using a large number of animals. Confidence in

1 the data base is high due to the existence of several subchronic and chronic studies, as well as
2 adequate reproductive and developmental toxicology data. High confidence in the RfD follows.
3
4

5 **I.A.6. EPA DOCUMENTATION AND REVIEW OF THE ORAL RfD**

6
7 Source Document -- U.S. EPA, 1998
8

9 This assessment was peer reviewed by external scientists. Their comments have been
10 evaluated carefully and incorporated in finalization of this IRIS summary. A record of these
11 comments is included as an appendix to U.S. EPA, 1998.
12

13 Other EPA Documentation -- None
14

15 Agency Consensus Date -- / /
16
17

18 **I.A.7. EPA CONTACTS (ORAL RfD)**

19
20 Please contact the Risk Information Hotline for all questions concerning this assessment
21 or IRIS, in general, at (513)569-7254 (phone), (513)569-7159 (FAX), or
22 RIH.IRIS@EPAMAIL.EPA.GOV (internet address).
23
24

25 26 27 28 **I.B. REFERENCE CONCENTRATION FOR CHRONIC INHALATION EXPOSURE** 29 **(RfC)**

30
31 Boron and Compounds
32 CASRN -- 7440-42-8
33 Last Revised -- 00/00/00
34

35 The inhalation Reference Concentration (RfC) is analogous to the oral RfD and is
36 likewise based on the assumption that thresholds exist for certain toxic effects such as cellular
37 necrosis. The inhalation RfC considers toxic effects for both the respiratory system
38 (portal-of-entry) and for effects peripheral to the respiratory system (extrapulmonary effects). It
39 is generally expressed in units of mg/cu.m. In general, the RfC is an estimate (with uncertainty
40 spanning perhaps an order of magnitude) of a daily inhalation exposure of the human population
41 (including sensitive subgroups) that is likely to be without an appreciable risk of deleterious
42 effects during a lifetime. Inhalation RfCs were derived according to the Interim Methods for
43 Development of Inhalation Reference Doses (EPA/600/8-88/066F August 1989) and
44 subsequently, according to Methods for Derivation of Inhalation Reference Concentrations and
45 Application of Inhalation Dosimetry (EPA/600/8-90/066F October 1994). RfCs can also be
46 derived for the noncarcinogenic health effects of substances that are carcinogens. Therefore, it is
47 essential to refer to other sources of information concerning the carcinogenicity of this

1 substance. If the U.S. EPA has evaluated this substance for potential human carcinogenicity, a
2 summary of that evaluation will be contained in Section II of this file.
3

4 NOT VERIFIABLE status indicates that the available data do not meet the minimum data
5 base requirements according to the current Agency methods document for RfDs (EPA/600/8-
6 90/066F October 1994). This does not preclude the use of information in cited references for
7 assessment by others.
8

9 I.B.1. INHALATION RfC SUMMARY

10
11 An RfC for boron is not recommended at this time. The literature regarding toxicity of
12 boron by inhalation exposure is sparse. There is a report from the Russian literature of reduced
13 sperm count and sperm motility from semen analysis of 6 workers who were a part of a group of
14 male workers (n=28) exposed to very high concentrations of boron aerosols (22-80 mg/m³) for
15 over 10 years (Tarasenko et al., 1972). These effects are consistent with the testicular effects
16 reported in oral studies, but have not been confirmed by other inhalation studies. No effect on
17 fertility was found in a much larger study of U.S. borate production workers (Whorton et al.,
18 1994a,b; 1992), but exposure concentrations were much lower (≈ 2.23 mg/m³ sodium borate or
19 0.31 mg B/m³) in this study. No target organ effects were found in the lone animal study, in
20 which rats were exposed to 77 mg/m³ of boron oxide aerosols (24 mg B/m³) for 24 weeks, but
21 testicular effects were examined only by limited histopathology (Wilding et al., 1959). This
22 study also included a high dose group exposed to 470 mg/m³ boron oxide (146 mg B/m³) for 10
23 weeks, a concentration at which the aerosol formed a dense cloud of fine particles and the
24 animals were covered with dust. Systemic endpoints were not examined, but growth was
25 reduced and there was evidence of nasal irritation. Acute irritant effects are well documented in
26 human workers exposed to borates, primarily at concentrations greater than 4.4 mg/m³ (Wegman
27 et al., 1994; Garabrant et al., 1984, 1985). However, there is no evidence for reduced pulmonary
28 function in workers with prolonged exposure (Wegman et al., 1994). These data are inadequate
29 to support derivation of an RfC for boron compounds.
30

31 I.B.2. PRINCIPAL AND SUPPORTING STUDIES (INHALATION RfC)

32
33 Tarasenko et al. (1972) reported low sperm count, reduced sperm motility and elevated
34 fructose content of seminal fluid from 6 workers who were part of a group of 28 male Russian
35 workers exposed for 10 or more years to high levels of boron aerosols (22-80 mg/m³) during the
36 production of boric acid. In response to this report and reports of reproductive effects in animal
37 studies (see Section 4.3.2), a controlled epidemiology study of reproductive effects was initiated
38 in U.S. workers exposed to sodium borates.
39

40 Whorton et al. (1994a,b, 1992) examined the reproductive effects of sodium borates on
41 male employees at a borax mining and production facility in the United States. A total of 542
42 subjects participated in the study (72% of the 753 eligible male employees) by answering a
43 questionnaire prepared by the investigators. The median exposure concentration was
44 approximately 2.23 mg/m³ sodium borate (roughly 0.31 mg B/m³). Average duration of
45 employment in participants was 15.8 years. Reproductive function was assessed in two ways.

1 First, the number of live births to the wives of workers during the period from 9 months after
2 occupational exposure began through 9 months after it ended was determined, and this number
3 was compared to a number obtained from the national fertility tables for U.S. women (an
4 unexposed control population). Wives of workers and controls were matched for maternal age,
5 parity, race and calendar year. This comparison produced the standardized birth ratio (SBR),
6 defined as the observed number of births divided by the expected number. Secondly, the
7 investigators examined possible deviations of the ratio of male to female offspring relative to the
8 U.S. ratio.

9
10 There was a significant excess in the SBR among participants as a whole (Whorton et al.,
11 1994a,b; 1992). Study participants fathered 529 births versus 466.6 expected (SBR=113,
12 $p<0.01$). This excess occurred even though the percentage of participants who had had
13 vasectomies (36%) was 5 times higher than the national average of 7% implicit in the expected
14 number of births. Participants were divided into 5 equal size groups ($n = 108/109$) based on
15 average workday exposure to sodium borates (<0.82 , $0.82-1.77$, $1.78-2.97$, $2.98-5.04$ and >5.05
16 mg/m^3). There was no trend in SBR with exposure concentration; the SBR was significantly
17 elevated for both the low and high dose groups, and close to expected for the middle 3 dose
18 groups. There were 42 participants who worked high-exposure jobs for two or more consecutive
19 years. Mean sodium borate exposure in this group was $23.2 \text{ mg}/\text{m}^3$ ($17.6 - 44.8 \text{ mg}/\text{m}^3$) and
20 mean duration of employment in a high-exposure job was 4.9 years (range: 2.1 - 20.4 years).
21 The SBR for these 42 workers was close to expected (102) despite a 48% vasectomy rate. These
22 workers also had elevated SBRs during the actual period of high exposure. An examination of
23 SBR for all participants by 5-year increments from 1950 to 1990 revealed no significant trend in
24 either direction over time.

25
26 Analyses of the percentage of female offspring showed an excess of females that
27 approached statistical significance (52.7% vs. 48.8% in controls) (Whorton et al., 1994a,b;
28 1992). This excess was not related to exposure, however, as percent female offspring decreased
29 with increasing sodium borate exposure concentration from 55.3% in the low dose group to
30 49.2% in the high dose group. Moreover, individuals with 2 or more consecutive years in high
31 borate exposure jobs had more boys than girls. The investigators concluded that exposure to
32 inorganic borates did not appear to adversely affect fertility in the population studied. This
33 study, while adequately conducted, has several inherent limitations. Thus, the human data are
34 insufficient to determine if boron may cause male reproductive toxicity (IEHR, 1997).

35
36 Whorton et al. (1992) also studied the effects of borates on reproductive function of
37 exposed female employees. Reproductive function was assessed in the same way as it was for
38 wives of male employees. A total of 81 employees were eligible, 68 of whom participated in the
39 study. No information was provided regarding matching of the exposed and control groups. The
40 SBR was 90 (32 offspring observed, 35.4 expected), indicating a deficiency, although not
41 statistically significant, in live births among exposed females. When the data were analyzed per
42 exposure category, the 76 employees (some nonparticipants apparently were included) in the low
43 and medium exposure category showed a nonstatistically significant deficit of births (37)
44 compared to 43.5 expected (SBR=85). No statistical differences were observed between
45 exposed and controls when the results were analyzed by exposure categories. The authors

1 concluded that the exposure to inorganic borates did not appear to affect fertility in the
2 population studied. It must be recognized, however, that the rather small sample size may have
3 precluded a meaningful statistical analysis of the results.
4

5 Culver et al. (1994) monitored boron levels in the blood and urine of workers exposed to
6 borate dust (borax, borax pentahydrate and anhydrous borax) at a borax production facility. The
7 workers were divided into three groups according to borate exposure. Workers in both the
8 medium and high exposure categories had significantly increased levels of boron in the blood
9 after working Monday ($\approx 0.25 \mu\text{g/g}$) in comparison to pre-shift Monday morning values (≈ 0.1
10 $\mu\text{g/g}$). Similarly, workers in the high exposure category had significantly higher urinary boron
11 levels Monday post-shift ($\approx 12 \mu\text{g/mg creatinine}$) than pre-shift ($\approx 2 \mu\text{g/mg creatinine}$). Boron in
12 the diets (which were assigned by the researchers to ensure uniformity among workers) and
13 workplace air was also monitored during this study. A higher proportion of total boron intake
14 was from air than from diet, and both blood and urine boron were best modeled based on air
15 concentration of boron alone (i.e., inclusion of dietary boron as an independent variable did not
16 increase the predictive power of the models). These data show that boron was absorbed during
17 the work day, and that borate dust in the air was the source of the additional boron in the blood
18 and urine. However, it is not clear what amount of the inhaled boron was actually absorbed
19 through the respiratory tract. The researchers speculated that due to the large size of the dust
20 particles in the work area, most of the inhaled borate would have been deposited in the upper
21 respiratory tract, where it could have been absorbed directly through the mucous membranes or
22 could have been cleared by mucociliary activity and swallowed.
23

24 Swan et al. (1995) investigated the relationship between spontaneous abortion in women
25 employed in the semiconductor manufacturing industry and various chemical and physical
26 agents used in the industry, including boron. The study population consisted of 904 current and
27 former female employees who became pregnant while working at one of 14 U.S. semiconductor
28 companies between 1986 and 1989. Approximately one-half of those included were fabrication
29 workers with some chemical exposure. Exposure classifications were based on jobs held at
30 conception and level of exposure to specific agents during the first trimester. The risk of
31 spontaneous abortion was increased in fabrication workers compared with other workers, and
32 particularly within the subgroup of workers who performed masking (a group with relatively low
33 boron exposure). No significant association was found between exposure to boron and
34 spontaneous abortion risk.
35

36 The respiratory and irritant effects of industrial exposure to boron compounds have also
37 been studied. The studies were conducted at the same borax mining and production facility as
38 the reproduction study of Whorton et al. (1994a,b; 1992). A health survey of workers at the
39 plant found complaints of dermatitis, cough, nasal irritation, nose bleeds and shortness of breath
40 (Birmingham and Key, 1963). Air concentrations of borate dust were not reported, but were
41 high enough to interfere with normal visibility. In response to this report, a cross-sectional study
42 of respiratory effects (questionnaire, spirometric testing, roentgenograms) was performed on 629
43 male workers at the plant (Ury, 1966). The study was inconclusive, but did find suggestive
44 evidence for an association between respiratory ill health and inhalation exposure to dehydrated
45 sodium borate dust based on analysis of FEV and respiratory illness data in the subgroup of 82

1 men who had worked for at least one year at the calcining and fusing processes compared with
2 the other 547 who had never worked at these processes.
3

4 Additional studies were performed by Garabrant et al. (1984, 1985). Garabrant et al.
5 (1985) studied a group of 629 workers employed for 5 or more years at the plant and employed
6 in an area with heavy borax exposure at the time of the study (93% of those eligible). Workers
7 were categorized into 4 groups according to borax exposure (1.1, 4.0, 8.4 and 14.6 mg/m³ borax),
8 and frequency of acute and chronic respiratory symptoms was determined. Statistically
9 significant, positive dose-related trends were found for (in order of decreasing frequency)
10 dryness of mouth, nose or throat, eye irritation, dry cough, nose bleeds, sore throat, productive
11 cough, shortness of breath and chest tightness. Frequency of these symptoms in the high dose
12 group ranged from 33% down to 5%. Pulmonary function tests and chest x-rays were not
13 affected by borax exposure. The researchers concluded that borax appears to cause simple
14 respiratory irritation that leads to chronic bronchitis with no impairment of respiratory function
15 at the exposure levels in this study. Irritation occurred primarily at concentrations of 4.4 mg/m³
16 or more. Garabrant et al. (1984) studied a subgroup of the 629 workers who were exposed to
17 boric oxide and boric acid. Workers who had held at least one job in an area with boron oxide or
18 boric acid exposure (n=113) were compared with workers who had never held a job in an area
19 with boron oxide or boric acid but had held at least one job in an area with low or minimal
20 exposure to borax (n=214). The boron oxide/boric acid workers had significantly higher rates of
21 eye irritation, dryness of mouth, nose or throat, sore throat and productive cough. Mean
22 exposure was 4.1 mg/m³, with a range of 1.2 to 8.5 mg/m³. The researchers concluded that boron
23 oxide and boric acid produce upper respiratory and eye irritation at less than 10 mg/m³.
24

25 Wegman et al. (1994) conducted a longitudinal study of respiratory function in workers
26 with chronic exposure to sodium borate dusts. Participants in the Garabrant et al. (1985) study
27 were re-tested for pulmonary function 7 years after the original survey. Of the 629 participants
28 in the original study in 1981, 371 were available for re-testing in 1988. Of these, 336 performed
29 pulmonary function tests (303 produced acceptable tests in both years). Cumulative exposure
30 was estimated for each participant for the years 1981-1988 as a time-weighted sum of the
31 exposure in each job held during that time. Exposure prior to 1981 was not included due to the
32 scarcity of monitoring data for those years. Pulmonary function (FEV₁, FVC) in study subjects
33 declined over the 7-year period at a rate very close to that expected based on standard population
34 studies. Cumulative borate exposure over the years 1981-1988 was not related to the change in
35 pulmonary function. Acute studies showed statistically significant, positive dose-related
36 increases in eye, nasal and throat irritation, cough and breathlessness with borate exposure (6-hr
37 TWA or 15-min TWA). The same relationships were present when effects were limited to
38 moderate severity or higher. There was no evidence for an effect of borate type (decahydrate,
39 pentahydrate, anhydrous) on response rate.
40

41 There are few data available regarding the toxicity of boron compounds by inhalation in
42 laboratory animals. Wilding et al. (1959) investigated the toxicity of boron oxide aerosols by
43 inhalation exposure in rats and dogs. A group of 70 albino rats, including both males and
44 females, was exposed to an average concentration of 77 mg/m³ of boron oxide aerosols (24 mg
45 B/m³) for 24 weeks (6 hours/day, 5 days/week). Additional groups of rats were exposed to 175

1 mg/m³ (54 mg B/m³) for 12 weeks (n=4) or 470 mg/m³ (146 mg B/m³) for 10 weeks (n=20) using
2 the same exposure regimen. At the latter concentration, the aerosol formed a dense cloud of fine
3 particles, and the animals were covered with dust. Also in this study, 3 dogs were exposed to 57
4 mg/m³ (18 mg B/m³) for 23 weeks. No clinical signs were noted, except a slight reddish exudate
5 from the nose of rats exposed to 470 mg/m³, which the researchers attributed to local irritation.
6 Growth was reduced roughly 9% in rats exposed to 470 mg/m³ compared to controls. Growth in
7 the lower dose groups and in dogs was not affected. There was a significant drop in pH, and
8 increase in urine volume, in rats exposed to 77 mg/m³. The researchers hypothesized that this
9 was due to formation of boric acid from boron oxide by hydration in the body and the diuretic
10 properties of boron oxide. There was also a significant increase in urinary creatinine at this
11 dose. No effect on serum chemistry, hematology, organ weights, histopathology (including the
12 testis), bone strength or liver function was found in either rats or dogs (not all endpoints were
13 studied in all exposure groups).

14
15
16 **___ I.B.3. UNCERTAINTY AND MODIFYING FACTORS (INHALATION RfC)**

17 Not Applicable

18
19
20
21 **___ I.B.4. ADDITIONAL STUDIES/COMMENTS (INHALATION RfC)**

22 Not Applicable

23
24
25
26 **___ I.B.5. CONFIDENCE IN THE INHALATION RfC**

27 Not Applicable

28
29
30
31 **___ I.B.6. EPA DOCUMENTATION AND REVIEW OF THE INHALATION RfC**

32 Source Document -- U.S. EPA, 1998

33
34
35 This assessment was peer reviewed by external scientists. Their comments have been
36 evaluated carefully and incorporated in finalization of this IRIS summary. A record of these
37 comments is included as an appendix to U.S. EPA, 1998.

38 Other EPA Documentation -- None

39 Agency Consensus Date -- / /

1 **__ I.B.7. EPA CONTACTS (INHALATION RfC)**

2
3 Please contact the Risk Information Hotline for all questions concerning this assessment
4 or IRIS, in general, at (513)569-7254 (phone), (513)569-7159 (FAX), or
5 RIH.IRIS@EPAMAIL.EPA.GOV (internet address).
6

7
8
9
10 **__ II. CARCINOGENICITY ASSESSMENT FOR LIFETIME EXPOSURE**

11 Boron and Compounds
12 CASRN -- 7440-42-8
13 Last Revised -- 00/00/00
14
15

16 Section II provides information on three aspects of the carcinogenic assessment for the
17 substance in question; the weight-of-evidence judgment of the likelihood that the substance is a
18 human carcinogen, and quantitative estimates of risk from oral exposure and from inhalation
19 exposure. The quantitative risk estimates are presented in three ways. The slope factor is the
20 result of application of a low-dose extrapolation procedure and is presented as the risk per
21 (mg/kg)/day. The unit risk is the quantitative estimate in terms of either risk per µg/L drinking
22 water or risk per µg/cu.m air breathed. The third form in which risk is presented is a
23 concentration of the chemical in drinking water or air associated with cancer risks of 1 in 10,000,
24 1 in 100,000, or 1 in 1,000,000. The rationale and methods used to develop the carcinogenicity
25 information in IRIS are described in The Risk Assessment Guidelines of 1986 (EPA/600/8-
26 87/045) and in the IRIS Background Document. IRIS summaries developed since the
27 publication of EPA's more recent Proposed Guidelines for Carcinogen Risk Assessment also
28 utilize those Guidelines where indicated (Federal Register 61(79):17960-18011, April 23, 1996).
29 Users are referred to Section I of this IRIS file for information on long-term toxic effects other
30 than carcinogenicity.
31
32

33 **__ II.A. EVIDENCE FOR HUMAN CARCINOGENICITY**

34
35 **__ II.A.1. WEIGHT-OF-EVIDENCE CHARACTERIZATION**

36
37 Classification -- Under EPA's current guidelines for carcinogen risk assessment (U.S. EPA,
38 1986), boron is classified as Group D; not classifiable as to human carcinogenicity. Under the
39 new proposed guidelines (U.S. EPA, 1996), the data are considered to be inadequate for
40 evaluation of the human carcinogenic potential of boron.
41

42 Basis -- No data were located regarding the existence of an association between cancer and
43 boron exposure in humans. Studies available in animals were inadequate to ascertain whether
44 boron causes cancer. The chronic rat feeding study conducted by Weir and Fisher (1972) was
45 not designed as a cancer bioassay. Only a limited number of tissues were examined

1 histopathologically, and the report failed to even mention tumor findings. The chronic mouse
2 study conducted by NTP (1987) was adequately designed, but the results are difficult to
3 interpret. There was an increase in hepatocellular carcinomas in low dose, but not high dose,
4 male mice that was within the range of historical controls. The increase was statistically
5 significant using the life table test, but not the incidental tumor test. The latter test is more
6 appropriate when the tumor in question is not the cause of death, as appeared to be the case for
7 this study. There was also a significant increase in the incidence of subcutaneous tumors in low
8 dose male mice. However, once again the increase was within the range of historical controls
9 and was not seen in the high dose group. Low survival in both the low and high dose male
10 groups (60 and 44%, respectively) may have reduced the sensitivity of this study for evaluation
11 of carcinogenicity. The chronic mouse study conducted by Schroeder and Mitchener (1975) was
12 inadequate to detect carcinogenicity because only one, very low dose level was used (0.95 mg
13 B/kg/day) and the MTD was not reached. No inhalation cancer studies were located. Studies of
14 boron compounds for genotoxicity were overwhelmingly negative, including studies in bacteria,
15 mammalian cells and mice *in vivo*.

16 17 18 **___ II.A.2. HUMAN CARCINOGENICITY DATA**

19
20 No studies were located regarding the carcinogenicity of boron in humans.

21 22 **___ II.A.3. ANIMAL CARCINOGENICITY DATA**

23
24 Weir and Fisher (1972) fed Sprague-Dawley rats a diet containing 0, 117, 350 or 1170
25 ppm boron as borax or boric acid for 2 years (approximately 0, 5.9, 17.5 or 58.5 mg B/kg-day).
26 There were 70 rats/sex in the control groups and 35/sex in the groups fed boron compounds. At
27 1170 ppm, rats receiving both boron compounds had decreased food consumption during the
28 first 13 weeks of study and suppressed growth throughout the study. Signs of toxicity at this
29 exposure level included swelling and desquamation of the paws, scaly tails, inflammation of the
30 eyelids and bloody discharge from the eyes. Testicular atrophy was observed in all high-dose
31 males at 6, 12 and 24 months. The seminiferous epithelium was atrophied, and the tubular size
32 in the testes was decreased. No treatment-related effects were observed in rats receiving 350 or
33 117 ppm boron as borax or boric acid. Based on effects observed in the high-dose group, it
34 appears that an MTD was achieved in this study. The study was designed to assess systemic
35 toxicity; only tissues from the brain, pituitary, thyroid, lung, heart, liver, spleen, kidney, adrenal,
36 pancreas, small and large intestine, urinary bladder, testes, ovary, bone and bone marrow were
37 examined histopathologically, and tumors were not mentioned in the report. Nevertheless, NTP
38 (1987) concluded that this study provided adequate data on the lack of carcinogenic effects of
39 boric acid in rats, and accordingly, conducted its carcinogenicity study only in mice.

40
41 Male and female (50/sex/group) B6C3F1 mice were fed a diet containing 0, 2500 or 5000
42 ppm boric acid for 103 weeks (NTP, 1987; Dieter, 1994). The low- and high-dose diets provided
43 approximate doses of 275 and 550 mg/kg-day (48 and 96 mg B/kg-day). Mean body weights of
44 high-dose mice were 10-17% lower than those of controls after 32 (males) or 52 (females)
45 weeks. No treatment-related clinical signs were observed throughout the study. Survival of the

1 male mice was significantly lower than that of controls after week 63 in the low-dose group and
2 after week 84 in the high-dose group. Survival was not affected in females. At termination, the
3 survival rates were 82, 60 and 44% in the control, low-, and high-dose males, respectively, and
4 66, 66 and 74% in the control, low-, and high-dose females, respectively. The low number of
5 surviving males may have reduced the sensitivity of the study for evaluation of carcinogenicity
6 (NTP, 1987).

7
8 There was an increased incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma (5/50, 12/50, 8/49) and
9 combined adenoma or carcinoma in low dose male mice (14/50, 19/50, 15/49) (NTP, 1987;
10 Dieter, 1994). The increase was statistically significant by life table tests, but not by incidental
11 tumor tests. The incidental tumor tests were probably the more appropriate form of statistical
12 analysis in this case because the hepatocellular carcinomas did not appear to be the cause of
13 death for males in this study; the incidence of these tumor types in animals that died prior to
14 study completion (7/30 or 23%) was similar to the incidence at terminal sacrifice (5/20 or 25%)
15 (NTP, 1987; Elwell, 1993). The hepatocellular carcinoma incidence in this study was within the
16 range of male mice historical controls both at the study lab (131/697 or 19% +/- 6%) and for
17 NTP (424/2084 or 20% +/- 7%) (NTP, 1987; Elwell, 1993). Also, the hepatocellular carcinoma
18 incidence in the male control group of this study (10%) was lower than the historical controls.
19 NTP concluded that the increase in hepatocellular tumors in low dose male mice in this study
20 was not due to administration of boric acid.

21
22 There was also a significant increase in the incidence of combined subcutaneous tissue
23 fibromas, sarcomas, fibrosarcomas and neurofibrosarcomas in low dose male mice (2/50, 10/50,
24 2/50) by both incidental and life table pair-wise tests (NTP, 1987; Dieter, 1994). This higher
25 incidence of subcutaneous tissue tumors is within the historical range (as high as 15/50 or 30%)
26 for these tumors in control groups of group-housed male mice from other dosed feed studies
27 (Elwell, 1993). The historical incidence at the study laboratory was 39/697 (6% +/- 4%) and in
28 NTP studies was 156/2091 (7% +/- 8%) (NTP, 1987). Based on the comparison to historical
29 controls and lack of any increase in the high dose group, NTP concluded that the increase in
30 subcutaneous tumors in low dose male mice was not compound-related. Overall, NTP
31 concluded that this study produced no evidence of carcinogenicity of boric acid in male or
32 female mice, although the low number of surviving males may have reduced the sensitivity of
33 the study.

34
35 Schroeder and Mitchener (1975) conducted a study in which 0 or 5 ppm of boron as
36 sodium metaborate was administered in the drinking water to groups of 54 male and 54 female
37 Charles River Swiss mice (approximately 0.95 mg B/kg/day) for their life span; controls
38 received deionized water. In adult animals, there generally were no effects observed on body
39 weights (at 30 days, treated animals were lighter than controls and at 90 days, treated males were
40 significantly heavier than controls) or longevity. The life spans of the dosed group did not differ
41 from controls. Gross and histopathologic examinations were performed to detect tumors.
42 Limited tumor incidence data were reported for other metals tested in this study, but not for
43 boron. Investigators reported that at this dose, boron was not tumorigenic for mice; however,
44 only one dose of boron (lower than other studies) was tested and an MTD was not reached.

1 **II.A.4. SUPPORTING DATA FOR CARCINOGENICITY**

2
3 Results of most short-term studies indicate that boron is not genotoxic. In the
4 streptomycin-dependent *Escherichia coli* Sd-4 assay, boric acid was either not mutagenic (Iyer
5 and Szybalski, 1958; Szybalski, 1958) or produced equivocal results (Demerec et al., 1951). In
6 *Salmonella typhimurium* strains TA1535, TA1537, TA98 and TA100, boric acid was not
7 mutagenic in the presence or absence of rat or hamster liver S-9 activating system (Benson et al.,
8 1984; Haworth et al., 1983; NTP, 1987). Boric acid (concentration, stability and purity not
9 tested by investigators) was also negative in the *Salmonella* microsome assay using strains
10 TA1535, TA1537, TA1538, TA98 and TA100 in the presence and absence of rat liver metabolic
11 activation (Stewart, 1991). Although a positive result was reported both with and without
12 metabolic activation for induction of β -galactosidase synthesis (a response to DNA lesions) in *E.*
13 *coli* PQ37 (SOS chromotest) (Odunola, 1997), this is an isolated finding at present.

14
15 Results in mammalian systems were all negative. Boric acid (concentration, stability and
16 purity not tested by investigators) was negative in inducing unscheduled DNA synthesis in
17 primary cultures of male F344 rat hepatocytes (Bakke, 1991). Boric acid did not induce forward
18 mutations in L5178Y mouse lymphoma cells with or without S-9 (NTP, 1987). Boric acid did
19 not induce mutations at the thymidine kinase locus in the L5178Y mouse lymphoma cells in the
20 presence or absence of rat liver activation system (Rudd, 1991). Crude borax ore and refined
21 borax were both negative in assays for mutagenicity in V79 Chinese hamster cells, C3H/10T1/2
22 mouse embryo fibroblasts and diploid human foreskin fibroblasts (Landolph, 1985). Similarly,
23 boric acid did not induce chromosome aberrations or increase the frequency of sister chromatid
24 exchanges in Chinese hamster ovary cells with or without rat liver metabolic activating systems
25 (NTP, 1987).

26
27 O'Loughlin (1991) performed a micronucleus assay on Swiss-Webster mice (10
28 animals/sex/dose). Boric acid was administered in deionized water orally (no verification of
29 stability, concentration or homogeneity was made of the boric acid by the investigators) for 2
30 consecutive days at 900, 1800 or 3500 mg/kg. Five mice/sex/dose were sacrificed 24 hours after
31 the final dose and 5/sex/dose were sacrificed 48 hours after the final dose. A deionized water
32 vehicle control (10/sex) and a urethane positive control (10 males) were also tested. Boric acid
33 did not induce chromosomal or mitotic spindle abnormalities in bone marrow erythrocytes in the
34 micronucleus assay in Swiss-Webster mice.

35
36
37
38
39 **II.B. QUANTITATIVE ESTIMATE OF CARCINOGENIC RISK FROM ORAL**
40 **EXPOSURE**

41 Not Applicable
42
43
44
45
46

1 **___ II.C. QUANTITATIVE ESTIMATE OF CARCINOGENIC RISK FROM**
2 **INHALATION EXPOSURE**

3
4 Not Applicable

5
6
7
8
9 **___ II.D. EPA DOCUMENTATION, REVIEW, AND CONTACTS (CARCINOGENICITY**
10 **ASSESSMENT)**

11
12 **___ II.D.1. EPA DOCUMENTATION**

13
14 Source Document -- U.S. EPA, 1998

15
16 This assessment was peer reviewed by external scientists. Their comments have been
17 evaluated carefully and incorporated in finalization of this IRIS summary. A record of these
18 comments is included as an appendix to U.S. EPA, 1998.

19
20
21 **___ II.D.2. EPA REVIEW (CARCINOGENICITY ASSESSMENT)**

22
23 Agency Consensus Date -- / /

24
25
26 **___ II.D.3. EPA CONTACTS (CARCINOGENICITY ASSESSMENT)**

27 Please contact the Risk Information Hotline for all questions concerning this assessment
28 or IRIS, in general, at (513)569-7254 (phone), (513)569-7159 (FAX), or
29 RIH.IRIS@EPAMAIL.EPA.GOV (internet address).

30
31
32
33
34 **_ III. [reserved]**

35
36 **_ IV. [reserved]**

37
38 **_ V. [reserved]**

39
40
41
42
43 **___ VI. BIBLIOGRAPHY**

44
45 Boron and Compounds
46 CASRN -- 7440-42-8
47 Last Revised -- 00/00/00

1
2 **___ VI.A. ORAL RfD REFERENCES**
3

4 Allen, BC; Strong, PL; Price, CJ; Hubbard, SA; Datson, G.P. (1996) Benchmark dose analysis of
5 developmental toxicity in rats exposed to boric acid. *Fund Appl Toxicol* 32:194-204.

6
7 Anderson, DL; Cunningham, WC; Lindstrom, TR. (1994) Concentrations and intakes of H, B, S,
8 K, Na, Cl, and NaCl in foods. *J Food Comp Anal* 7:59-82.

9
10 Clarke, WB; Gibson, RS. (1988) Lithium, boron and nitrogen in 1-day diet composites and a
11 mixed-diet standard. *J Food Comp Anal* 1:209-220.

12
13 Cox, D; Lindley, D. (1974) *Theoretical Statistics*. Chapman & Hall, London.

14
15 Dixon, RL; Sherins, RJ; Lee, IP. (1979) Assessment of environmental factors affecting male
16 fertility. *Environ Health Perspect* 30:53-68.

17
18 Dunlop, W. (1981) Serial changes in renal haemodynamics during normal human pregnancy.
19 *Br J Obstet Gynecol* 88:1-9.

20
21 ECETOC (European Centre for Ecotoxicology and Toxicology of Chemicals). (1994)
22 *Reproductive and General Toxicology of Some Inorganic Borates and Risk Assessment for*
23 *Human Beings*. Technical Report No. 65. Brussels, December.

24
25 Fail, PA; George, JD; Seely, JC; Grizzle, TB; Heindel, JJ. (1991) Reproductive toxicity of boric
26 acid in Swiss (CD-1) mice: Assessment using the continuous breeding protocol. *Fund Appl*
27 *Toxicol* 17:225-239.

28
29 Field, EA; Price, CJ; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Morrissey, RE. (1989) Final report on the
30 *Developmental Toxicity of Boric Acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in CD-1-Swiss Mice*. NTP Final
31 *Report No. 89-250*. National Toxicology Program, U.S. DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle
32 *Park, NC, August 11*.

33
34 Heindel, JJ; Price, CJ; Field, EA; et al. (1992) Developmental toxicity of boric acid in mice and
35 rats. *Fund Appl Toxicol* 18:266-277.

36
37 Heindel, JJ; Price, CJ; Schwetz, BA. (1994) The developmental toxicity of boric acid in mice,
38 rats and rabbits. *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 7):107-112.

39
40 Hunt, CD. (1994) The biochemical effects of physiologic amounts of dietary boron in animal
41 nutrition models. *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 7):35-43.

42
43 IEHR (Institute for Evaluating Health Risks). (1997) An assessment of boric acid and borax
44 using the IEHR evaluative process for assessing human developmental and reproductive toxicity
45 of agents. *Reprod Toxicol* 11:123-160.

1 Iyengar, GV; Clarke, WB; Downing, RG; Tanner, JT. (1988) Lithium in biological and dietary
2 materials. Proc Intl Workshop, Trace Elem Anal Chem Med Biol 5:267-269.
3
4 Kavlock, RJ; Allen, BC; Faustman, EM; Kimmel, CA. (1995) Dose response assessments for
5 developmental toxicity: IV. Benchmark doses for fetal weight changes. Fund Appl Toxicol
6 26:211-222.
7
8 Ku, WW; Chapin, RE; Wine, RN; Gladen, BC. (1993) Testicular toxicity of boric acid (BA):
9 Relationship of dose to lesion development and recovery in the F344 rat. Reprod Toxicol
10 7:305-319.
11
12 Linder, RE; Strader, LF; Rehnberg, GL. (1990) Effect of acute exposure to boric acid on the
13 male reproductive system of the rat. J Toxicol Environ Health 31:133-146.
14
15 Mertz, W. (1993) Essential trace metals: new definitions based on new paradigms. Nutr Rev
16 51:287-295.
17
18 Nielsen, FH. (1991) Nutritional requirements for boron, silicon, vanadium, nickel, and arsenic:
19 Current knowledge and speculation. FASEB J 5:2661-2667.
20
21 Nielsen, FH. (1992) Facts and fallacies about boron. Nutr Today 27:6-12.
22
23 Nielsen, FH. (1994) Biochemical and physiologic consequences of boron deprivation in humans.
24 Environ Health Perspect 102(Suppl. 7):59-63.
25
26 Nielsen, FH; Hunt, CD; Mullen, LM; Hunt, JR. (1987) Effect of dietary boron on minerals,
27 estrogen, and testosterone metabolism in post-menopausal women. FASEB J 1:394-397.
28
29 NRC (National Research Council). (1989) Recommended Dietary Allowances, 10th ed.
30 National Academy Press, Washington, DC. p. 267.
31
32 NTP (National Toxicology Program). (1987) Toxicology and Carcinogenesis Studies of Boric
33 Acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in B6C3F1 Mice (feed studies). NTP Tech. Rep. Ser. No. 324.
34 U.S. DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle Park, NC.
35
36 Pahl, MV; Culver, BD; Strong, PL; Murray, FJ; Vaziri, ND. (2001) The effect of pregnancy on
37 renal clearance of boron in humans: a study based on normal dietary intake of boron. Toxicol
38 Sci 60(2):252-256.
39
40 Price, CJ; Field, EA; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Morrissey, RE; Schwetz, BA. (1990) Final report
41 on the Developmental Toxicity of Boric Acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in Sprague Dawley Rats.
42 NTP Report No. 90-105 (and Report Supplement No. 90-105A). National Toxicology Program,
43 U.S. DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle Park, NC, May 1.
44

1 Price, CJ; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Heindel, JJ; Schwetz, BA. (1991) Final report on the
2 Developmental Toxicity of Boric Acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in New Zealand White Rabbits.
3 NTP TER-90003. National Toxicology Program, U.S. DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle
4 Park, NC, November (and Laboratory Supplement No. TER-90003, December).
5
6 Price, CJ; Marr, MC; Myers, CB. (1994) Determination of the No-Observable-Adverse-Effect
7 Level (NOAEL) for Developmental Toxicity in Sprague-Dawley (CD) Rats Exposed to Boric
8 Acid in Feed on Gestational Days 0 to 20, and Evaluation of Postnatal Recovery through
9 Postnatal Day 21. Final report. (3 volumes, 716 pp). RTI Identification No. 65C-5657-200.
10 Research Triangle Institute, Center for Life Science, Research Triangle Park, NC.
11
12 Price, CJ; Strong, PL; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Murray, FJ. (1996a.) Developmental toxicity
13 NOAEL and postnatal recovery in rats fed boric acid during gestation. *Fund Appl Toxicol*
14 32:179.
15
16 Price, CJ; Marr, MC; Myers, CB; Seely, JC; Heindel, JJ; Schwetz, BA. (1996b) The
17 developmental toxicity of boric acid in rabbits. *Fund Appl Toxicol* 34:176-187.
18
19 Renwick, AG. (1991) Safety factors and establishment of acceptable daily intake. *Food Add*
20 *Contam* 8(2):135-150.
21
22 Renwick, AG. (1993) Data-derived safety factors for the evaluation of food additives and
23 environmental contaminants. *Food Add Contam* 10(3):275-305.
24
25 Seal, BS; Weeth, HJ. (1980) Effect of boron in drinking water on the male laboratory rat. *Bull*
26 *Environ Contam Toxicol* 25:782-789.
27
28 TERA (Toxicology Excellence for Risk Assessment). (1997) Toxicokinetics and
29 Toxicodynamics of Boron: Effect on the Derivation of an Uncertainty Factor for Development of
30 a Tolerable Intake. September 30, 1997.
31
32 Treinen, KA; Chapin, RE. (1991) Development of testicular lesions in F344 rats after treatment
33 with boric acid. *Toxicol Appl Pharmacol* 107:325-335.
34
35 U.S. Borax Research Corp. (1963) MRID No. 00068026; HED Doc. No. 009301. Available
36 from EPA. Write to FOI, EPA, Washington, DC. 20460.
37
38 U.S. Borax Research Corp. (1966) MRID No. 00005622, 00068021, 00068881; HED Doc. No.
39 009301. Available from EPA. Write to FOI, EPA, Washington, DC. 20460.
40
41 U.S. Borax Research Corp. (1967) MRID No. 00005623, 005624; HED Doc. No. 009301.
42 Available from EPA. Write to FOI, EPA, Washington, DC. 20460.
43
44 U.S. Borax. (2000) UCI Boric Acid Clearance Study Reports and Associated Data: Rat and
45 Human Studies, April 4, 2000.

1 U.S. EPA. (1980) Guidelines and Methodology Used in the Preparation of Health Effect
2 Assessment Chapters of the Consent Decree Water Criteria Documents. Federal Register.
3 45(231):79347-79357.

4
5 U.S. EPA. (1988) Recommendations for and documentation of biological values for use in risk
6 assessment. EPA 600/6-87/008, NTIS PB88-179874/AS, February 1988.

7
8 U.S. EPA. (1998) Science policy council handbook: peer review. Prepared by the Office of
9 Science Policy, Office of Research and Development, Washington, DC. EPA 100-B-98-001.

10
11 Vaziri, ND; Oveisi, F; Culver, BD; Pahl, MV; Andersen, ME; Strong, PL; Murray, FJ. (2001)
12 The effect of pregnancy on renal clearance of boron in rats given boric acid orally. Toxicol Sci
13 60(2):257-263.

14
15 Weir, RJ; Fisher, RS. (1972) Toxicologic studies on borax and boric acid. Toxicol Appl
16 Pharmacol 23:351-364.

17
18 WHO (World Health Organization). (1998a) Environmental Health Criteria 204: Boron.
19 International Programme on Chemical Safety, Geneva, Switzerland. ISBN 92 4 157204 3.

20
21
22
23
24 **VI.B. INHALATION RfC REFERENCES**

25
26 ACGIH (American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists). (1991) Borates, tetra,
27 sodium salts, Documentation of Threshold Limit Values and Biological Exposure Indices for
28 Chemical Substances in the Workroom Air, 6th ed. ACGIH, Cincinnati, OH. p. 141-147.

29
30 Birmingham, DJ; Key, MM. (1963) Preliminary Survey, U.S. Borax Plant, Boron, CA (February
31 20, 1963). Occupational Health Research and Training Facility, Division of Occupational
32 Health, Public Health Service, U.S. Dept. Of Health, Education and Welfare, Cincinnati, OH.
33 (Cited in ACGIH, 1991)

34
35 Culver, BD; Shen, PT; Taylor, TH; et al. (1994) The relationship of blood- and urine-boron to
36 boron exposure in borax-workers and the usefulness of urine-boron as an exposure marker.
37 Environ Health Perspect 102(Suppl 7):133-137.

38
39 Garabrant, DH; Bernstein, L; Peters, JM; Smith, TJ. (1984) Respiratory and eye irritation from
40 boron oxide and boric acid dusts. J Occup Med 26:584-586.

41
42 Garabrant, DH; Bernstein, L; Peters, JM; et al. (1985) Respiratory effects of borax dust. Br J Ind
43 Med 42:831-837.

1 IEHR (Institute for Evaluating Health Risks). (1997) An assessment of boric acid and borax
2 using the IEHR evaluative process for assessing human developmental and reproductive toxicity
3 of agents. *Reprod Toxicol* 11:123-160.

4
5 Swan, SH; Beaumont, JJ; Hammond, SK; et al. (1995) Historical cohort study of spontaneous
6 abortion among fabrication workers in the semiconductor health study: agent-level analysis. *Am*
7 *J Indust Med* 28:751-769.

8
9 Tarasenko, NY; Kasparov, AA; Strongina, OM. (1972) Effect of boric acid on the reproductive
10 function of the male organism. *Gig Tr Prof Zabol* 11:13-16. (Cited in Whorton et al., 1994b)

11
12 Ury, HK. (1966) Interim Report on the 1963 Respiratory Disease Survey at Boron, CA. Air
13 Pollution Medical Studies Unit, Bureau of Chronic Diseases, California State Dept. of Public
14 Health. (Cited in ACGIH, 1991)

15
16 U.S. EPA. (1998) Science policy council handbook: peer review. Prepared by the Office of
17 Science Policy, Office of Research and Development, Washington, DC. EPA 100-B-98-001.

18
19 Wegman, DH; Eisen, EA; Hu, X; et al. (1994) Acute and chronic respiratory effects of sodium
20 borate particulate exposures. *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 7):119-128.

21
22 Whorton, D; Haas, J; Trent, L. (1992) Reproductive Effects of Inorganic Borates on Male
23 Employees: Birth Rate Assessment Report. Prepared for United States Borax & Chemical
24 Corporation. Document No. 6966001.

25
26 Whorton, D; Haas, J; Trent, L. (1994a) Reproductive effects of inorganic borates on male
27 employees: birth rate assessment. *Environ Health Perspect* 102(Suppl 7):129-131.

28
29 Whorton, MD; Haas, JL; Trent, L; Wong, O. (1994b) Reproductive effects of sodium borates on
30 male employees: birth rate assessment. *Occup Environ Med* 51:761-767.

31
32 Wilding, JL; Smith, WJ; Yevich, P; et al. (1959) The toxicity of boron oxide. *Am Ind Hyg*
33 *Assoc J* 20:284-289.

34
35
36
37
38 **___ VI.C. CARCINOGENICITY ASSESSMENT REFERENCES**

39
40 Bakke, JP. (1991) Evaluation of the potential of boric acid to induce unscheduled DNA synthesis
41 in the *in vitro* hepatocyte DNA repair assay using the male F-344 rat. (Unpublished study)
42 Submitted by U.S. Borax Corp. MRID No. 42038903.

43
44 Benson, WH; Birge, WJ; Dorrough, HW. (1984) Absence of mutagenic activity of sodium borate
45 (borax) and boric acid in the Salmonella preincubation test. *Environ Toxicol Chem*
46 3:209-214.

1 Demerec, M; Bentani, G; Flint, J. (1951) A survey of chemicals for mutagenic action on *E. coli*.
2 Am Nat 84(821):119-136.
3
4 Dieter, MP. (1994) Toxicity and carcinogenicity studies of boric acid in male and female
5 B6C3F₁ mice. Environ Health Perspect 102(Suppl 7):93-97.
6
7 Elwell, M. (1993) Letter to C. Smallwood, U.S. EPA, Cincinnati, OH. March 5.
8
9 Haworth, S; Lawlor, T; Mortelmans, K; Speck, W; Zeiger, E. (1983) Salmonella mutagenicity
10 test results for 250 chemicals. Environ Mutagen (Suppl.)1:3-142.
11
12 Iyer, VN; Szybalski, W. (1958) Two simple methods for the detection of chemical mutagens.
13 Appl Microbiol 6:23-29.
14
15 Landolph, JR. (1985) Cytotoxicity and negligible genotoxicity of borax and borax ores to
16 cultured mammalian cells. Am J Ind Med 7:31-43.
17
18 NTP (National Toxicology Program). (1987) Toxicology and Carcinogenesis Studies of Boric
19 Acid (CAS No. 10043-35-3) in B6C3F₁ Mice (feed studies). NTP Tech. Rep. Ser. No. 324.
20 U.S. DHHS, PHS, NIH, Research Triangle Park, NC.
21
22 Odunola, OA. (1997) Individual and combined genotoxic response of boric acid and aflatoxin B₁
23 in *Escherichia coli* PQ37. East Afr Med. J 74:499-502.
24
25 O'Loughlin, KG. (1991) Bone marrow erythrocyte micronucleus assay of boric acid in Swiss-
26 Webster mice. (Unpublished study) Submitted by U.S. Borax Corp. MRID No. 42038904.
27
28 Rudd, CJ. (1991) Mouse lymphoma cell mutagenesis assay (tK+/-/tK-/-) of boric acid.
29 (Unpublished study) Submitted by U.S. Borax Corp. MRID No. 4203902.
30
31 Schroeder, HA; Mitchener, M. (1975) Life-term effects of mercury, methyl mercury, and nine
32 other trace metals on mice. J Nutr 105:453-458.
33
34 Stewart, KR. (1991) Salmonella/microsome plate incorporation assay of boric acid.
35 (Unpublished study) Submitted by U.S. Borax Corp. MRID No. 4203901.
36
37 Szybalski, W. (1958) Special microbiological system. II. Observations of chemical mutagenesis
38 in microorganisms. Ann NY Acad. Sci 76:475-489.
39
40 U.S. EPA. (1986) Guidelines for carcinogen risk assessment. Federal Register
41 51(185):33992-34003.
42
43 U.S. EPA. (1996a) Proposed guidelines for carcinogen risk assessment. Federal Register
44 61(79):17960-18011.
45

1 U.S. EPA. (1998) Science policy council handbook: peer review. Prepared by the Office of
2 Science Policy, Office of Research and Development, Washington, DC. EPA 100-B-98-001.

3
4 Weir, RJ; Fisher, RS. (1972) Toxicologic studies on borax and boric acid. Toxicol Appl
5 Pharmacol 23:351-364.

6
7
8
9
10 **___ VII. REVISION HISTORY**

11 Boron and Compounds
12 CASRN -- 7440-42-8

13
14
15 Date Section Description

16
17 / /
18 / /
19 / /
20 / /

21
22
23
24
25 **___ VIII. SYNONYMS**

26 Boron and Compounds
27 CASRN -- 7440-42-8
28 Last Revised -- 00/00/00
29

1 **APPENDIX C. REGRESSION ANALYSIS OF SERUM CREATININE**
2 **AND INULIN CLEARANCE**
3
4

5 A log-linear regression was performed to investigate the relationship between values of
6 serum creatinine (Scr) and inulin clearance (Cin). The log of Cin was found to be normally
7 distributed using the Kolmogorov-Smirnov Goodness of Fit test (P=0.065), which is marginal in
8 terms of significance. However the visual fit of a histogram (Figure 1) shows a lognormal
9 distribution for Cin to be reasonable for purposes of a regression analysis. Using a stepwise
10 regression analysis in SAS, and analyzing for Scr, Scr², the log of Scr and the square root of Scr,
11 the procedure found the log of Scr to be the only variable that met the 0.15 significance level for
12 entry into the model. Thus, the resulting regression model is:
13

14
$$\log(\text{Cin}) = 1.79 - 1.3 \log(\text{Scr})$$

15

16 As shown in Figure 2, the model fit the data well. Also, Table 1, the Analysis of Variance
17 results, shows that the parameter estimates were also satisfactory with all p-values <0.0001. The
18 R-squared value was 0.79, showing that 79% of the variance in the dependent variable was
19 explained by the model. Residuals appeared randomly distributed when graphed, but tests for
20 normality were not significant (e.g., Kolmogorov-Smirnov p=0.03).
21

22 Predictions of Cin values from Scr values were desired for Scr=1.4 mg/dl and for Scr =
23 0.8 mg/dl. Table 2 shows these results. When predicting a “future value of the dependent
24 variable”, it is appropriate to use a prediction interval. Thus, the results are for Scr=1.4 mg/dl,
25 the predicted value of Cin from the model is Cin = 39.8 mL/min, with a 95% prediction interval
26 of (17.8, 89.1); for Scr = 0.8 mg/dl, the predicted value of Cin from the model is 79.4 mL/min,
27 with a 95% prediction interval of (36.3, 186.2).

Table 1
Analysis of Variance Results

Dependent variable: Log of Cin

Source	DF	Sum of Squares	Mean Square	F Value	Pr > F
Model	1	17.38605	17.38605	545.61	<0.0001
Error	140	4.46117	0.03187		
Corrected Total	141	21.84721			
Root MSE	0.17851	R-Square	0.7958		
Dependent Mean	1.56837	Adj R-Sq	0.7943		
Coeff Var	11.38183				

Parameter Estimates

Variable	DF	Parameter Estimate	Standard Error	t Value	Pr > t
Intercept	1	1.78846	0.01770	101.06	<0.0001
LScr	1	-1.29614	0.05549	-23.36	<0.0001

Table 2
Prediction Intervals

Linear Regression Results					R2 = 0.79		
Model: $\log(\text{Cin}) = 1.79 - 1.3 \cdot \log(\text{Scr})$					All p values < 0.0001		
log10(Scr)	Pred val	SE Pred val	95% CI Mean		95% Pred Int		
0.146		1.6	0.015	1.57	1.63	1.25	1.95
-0.098		1.9	0.02	1.87	1.96	1.56	2.27
Scr	Conversion of Values Using Anti-log						
1.399587	39.81072	1.035142	37.15352	42.65795	17.78279	89.12509	
0.797995	79.43282	1.047129	74.13102	91.20108	36.30781	186.2087	

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43

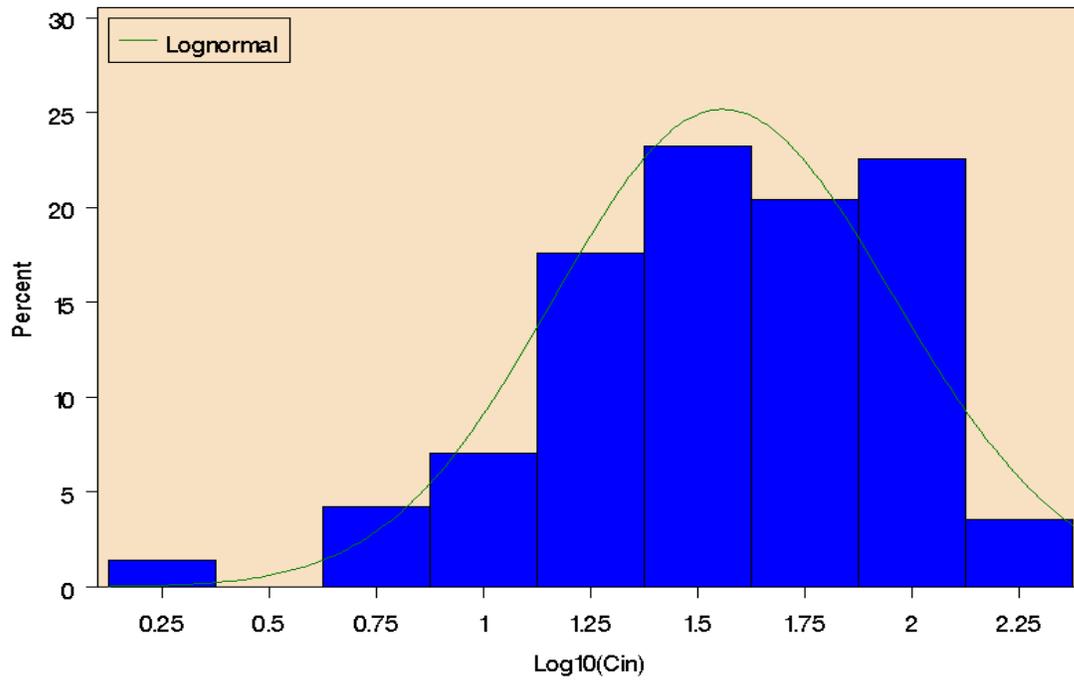


Figure 1

Histogram of Lognormal Fit for Cin Values

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32

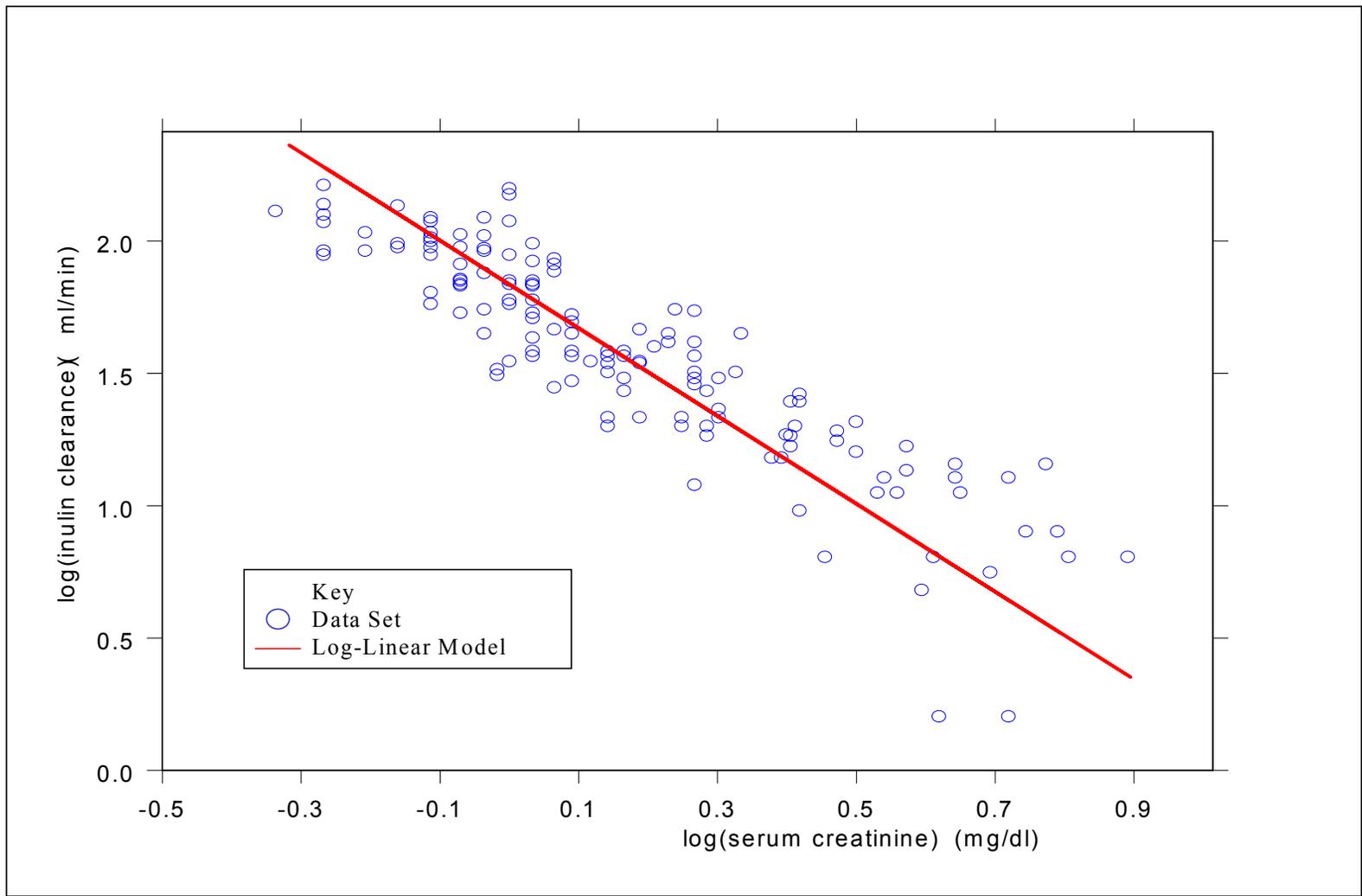


Figure 2

Modeled Regression Line and Raw Data Set

Charge to Reviewers for the Revised Sections of the Boron Toxicological Review and IRIS Summaries.

The U. S. EPA is conducting a peer review of the scientific basis supporting the health hazard and dose response assessment for Boron that will appear on the Agency's online data base, the Integrated Risk Information System (IRIS). Peer Review is meant to ensure that science is used credibly and appropriately in derivation of these dose-response assessments. The primary function of the peer reviewer should be to judge whether the choice, use and interpretation of the data employed in the derivation of the assessment is appropriate and scientifically sound. This review is not of the recommended agency risk assessment guidelines or methodologies as those have been reviewed by external scientific peers, the public and the EPA Science Advisory Boards.

The IRIS Toxicological Review for Boron and IRIS Summary Sheets have previously gone through two internal and external reviews. However, certain sections of the Toxicological Review have been revised since these peer reviews took place. Revisions to the last external review draft were made based on some external reviewer comments and comments from the public when the external review draft was posted on the National Center for Environmental Assessment web site.

While all external peer review and public comments strongly supported using a data-derived approach for addressing uncertainty factors, a few methodological issues remained. Therefore, the previous method for using data to derive an uncertainty factor has been revised with this new draft. This revised method has been through the agency's internal review process, and has been submitted for one more formal external peer review.

Due to the amount of review that this document has already received we are requesting review comments **only** on the revised method of using toxicokinetic data to replace uncertainty factors. However, you will probably need to familiarize yourself with other parts of the document that pertain to the data used in the assessment. The following sections have been revised. The questions for reviewers apply to those sections only.

Toxicological Review: 5.1.3 Derivation of the RfD

RfD Summary Sheet: I.A.3. UNCERTAINTY AND MODIFYING FACTORS (ORAL RfD)

Questions for Reviewers

1. The Agency as yet has no guidance for using toxicokinetic or toxicodynamic data for modification of uncertainty factors for Reference Doses. Therefore the use of

toxicokinetic data for establishing the boron RfD could set some precedents that will need scrutiny. Please carefully evaluate the many different and sometimes complex arguments in Section 5.1.3 as to their organization, clarity, and scientific merit. Do they hang together?

2. Is the approach we're taking for an uneven split of the kinetic and dynamic components of the interspecies uncertainty factor reasonable? Is the default split for the interspecies uncertainty factor of 4.0 for kinetics and 2.5 for dynamics the correct one?
3. For the interspecies extrapolation, a simple kinetic model is presented for linking the specific kinetic extrapolation variable (boron clearance) to external exposure. Is this model reasonable? Are there any implicit assumptions that need to be stated? Are the various surrogacy assumptions reasonable? Are the clearance data adequate for the purpose. Do you agree that the data are adequate for reduction of the interspecies kinetic uncertainty subfactor (UF_{AK}) to 1.0?
4. For the intra-human toxicokinetic variability assessment, do you agree that GFR variability is an adequate surrogate for variability in boron clearance and provides a less uncertain estimate than using the boron clearance data of Pahl et al. (2001)? Do you agree with the general approach for determining intra-human variability (ratio of mean GFR to 0.1 percentile)? If not, is there a more viable alternative? Is the assumption of a lognormal distribution adequately supported? Is the magnitude of the residual uncertainty in UF_{HK} appropriate?
5. Are there any other critical issues on which we have not explicitly asked for comment?